



Micah

translationNotes

v8

Copyrights & Licensing

License:

This work is made available under a [Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License](#), which means

You are free:

- Share — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format
- Adapt — remix, transform, and build upon the material for any purpose, even commercially.

Under the following conditions:

- Attribution — You must attribute the work as follows: “Original work available at <http://unfoldingword.org>.” Attribution statements in derivative works should not in any way suggest that we endorse you or your use of this work.
- ShareAlike — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

Use of trademarks: **unfoldingWord** is a trademark of Distant Shores Media and may not be included on any derivative works created from this content. Unaltered content from <http://unfoldingword.org> must include the **unfoldingWord** logo when distributed to others. But if you alter the content in any way, you must remove the **unfoldingWord** logo before distributing your work.

This work is still being revised, if you have comments or questions please email them to help@door43.org

Version: 8

Published: 2017-07-05

Table of Contents

Copyrights & Licensing	1
translationNotes	9
Introduction to Micah	9
Micah 01 General Notes	12
Micah 1:1	13
Micah 1:2-4	15
Micah 1:5	17
Micah 1:6-7	19
Micah 1:8-10	21
Micah 1:11-12	24
Micah 1:13-14	26
Micah 1:15-16	28
Micah 02 General Notes	30
Micah 2:1-2	31
Micah 2:3-5	33
Micah 2:6-8	36
Micah 2:9-11	39
Micah 2:12-13	41
Micah 03 General Notes	43
Micah 3:1-3	44
Micah 3:4	46
Micah 3:5-7	48
Micah 3:8	51
Micah 3:9-11	53
Micah 3:12	56
Micah 04 General Notes	58
Micah 4:1	59
Micah 4:2-3	61
Micah 4:4-5	64
Micah 4:6-8	66
Micah 4:9-10	69
Micah 4:11-12	72
Micah 4:13	74
Micah 05 General Notes	76
Micah 5:1	77
Micah 5:2-3	79
Micah 5:4-5	82
Micah 5:6-7	84
Micah 5:8-9	86
Micah 5:10-11	89
Micah 5:12-15	91

Table of Contents

Micah 06 General Notes	93
Micah 6:1-2	94
Micah 6:3-5	96
Micah 6:6-8	99
Micah 6:9-10	102
Micah 6:11-12	104
Micah 6:13-15	106
Micah 6:16	108
Micah 07 General Notes	110
Micah 7:1-2	111
Micah 7:3-4	113
Micah 7:5-6	115
Micah 7:7-8	117
Micah 7:9	119
Micah 7:10	121
Micah 7:11-13	123
Micah 7:14-15	125
Micah 7:16-17	127
Micah 7:18	129
Micah 7:19-20	131
translationQuestions	133
Micah 1	133
Micah 2	134
Micah 3	135
Micah 4	136
Micah 5	137
Micah 6	138
Micah 7	139
translationWords	141
Aaron	141
abomination, abominable	142
Abraham, Abram	143
adversary, enemy	145
afflict, affliction	146
Ahab	148
Ahaz	149
angry, anger	150
anoint, anointed, anointing	151
arrogant	153
Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth	154
assembly, assemble	155
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	157
avenge, revenge, vengeance	158

Babylon, Babylonian	160
Balaam	162
Bashan	163
Bethlehem, Ephrathah	164
bles, blessed, blessing	165
blood	167
bow, bow down	169
bribe	171
bronze	172
brother, brothers	173
burnt offering, offering by fire	175
cast out, drive out, throw out	176
chariot	177
children, child	178
Christ, Messiah	180
clan	182
compassion, compassionate	183
counsel, counselor, advice, advisor	184
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love	185
cow, calf, bull, cattle	186
darkness	187
deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive	189
declare, declaration	191
defile, be defiled	192
deliver, deliverer, deliverance	194
dishonor, dishonorable	196
divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer	197
eagle	198
earth, earthly	199
Egypt, Egyptian	201
enslave, in bondage	203
Euphrates River	204
everlasting, eternal, eternity	205
evil, wicked, wickedness	207
exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation	209
exile, the Exile	210
face	211
faith	213
faithful, faithfulness	215
fear, fears, afraid	217
fig	219
fire	220
firstborn	221

Table of Contents

flock, herd	223
forever	224
foundation, founded	226
fruit, fruitful	228
gate, gate bar	230
Gath	231
gift, gifts	232
Gilead	233
Gilgal	234
glean, gleaning	235
God	236
god, gods, goddess	239
good, goodness	241
grape	243
guilt, guilty	244
hand, right hand, to hand over	246
head	248
Hezekiah	250
high places	251
Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit	252
holy, holiness	254
horse	256
house	257
humble, humbles, humbled, humility	259
idol, idolatrous	260
image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure	262
inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir	263
iniquity, iniquities	265
innocent	266
Israel, Israelites	268
Jacob, Israel	270
Jerusalem	272
Jotham	274
Judah	275
Judah, kingdom of Judah	276
judge	278
judge, judges, judgment, judgments	279
just, justice, justly	281
king	283
kingdom	285
labor pains, in labor	287
lament, laments, lamentation	288
last day, last days, latter days	289

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh	290
light	292
lion	294
Lord	295
Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God	297
lots, casting lots	299
love, loves, loving, loved	300
majesty	303
Micah	304
mighty, might	305
mind	307
miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs	308
Miriam	310
Moab, Moabite, Moabites	311
mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker	312
Moses	314
mourn, mourning	316
name, names, named	317
nation	319
neighbor	321
oil	322
olive	323
peace, peaceful	324
people group, peoples, the people, a people	326
people of God, my people	328
perish, perished, perishing, perishable	330
pillar, column	331
power, powers	332
priest, priests, priesthood	334
proclaim, proclamation	336
prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	337
prostitute, harlot, whore	339
punish, punishment	340
raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose	342
reap, reaper	344
reign	345
rejoice	346
remnant	347
repent, repents, repented, repentance	349
reproach	351
restore, restores, restored, restoration	352
righteous, righteousness	354
robe	356

Table of Contents

rod	357
ruin, ruins	358
ruler, rule	359
salvation	360
Samaria, Samaritan	361
save, saves, saved, safe	363
Savior, savior	365
serpent, snake, viper	366
shame, shameful, ashamed	367
sheep, ram, ewe	368
shepherd, to shepherd	370
sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning	372
sow, sower, plant	375
spear	377
spirit, spirits, spiritual	378
stone, stones, stoning	380
strong drink	381
stronghold, fortress, fortified	382
sword	383
temple	385
testimony, testify	387
thresh, threshing	389
tongue	390
transgress, transgresses, transgression	392
true, truth, truths	393
trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	395
unclean	397
unjust, unjustly, injustice	399
vine	400
vineyard	401
vision	402
voice	403
walk, walks, walked, walking	404
watchtower, tower	406
water, waters	407
wine, wineskin, new wine	409
wise, wisdom	411
witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses	413
woe	415
word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures	417
word, words	419
works, deeds, work, acts	421
worship	423

wrath, fury	425
Yahweh	426
Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts	429
Zion, Mount Zion	430
translationAcademy	431
Abstract Nouns	431
Active or Passive	434
Apostrophe	437
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	439
Doublet	443
Ellipsis	445
Exclusive and Inclusive “We”	447
First, Second, or Third Person	449
Forms of You	451
How to Translate Names	453
Hyperbole and Generalization	457
Idiom	461
Irony	464
Metaphor	467
Metonymy	475
Nominal Adjectives	478
Numbers	480
Parallelism	483
Personification	486
Rhetorical Question	488
Simile	492
Symbolic Action	495
Synecdoche	497
Translate Unknowns	499

translationNotes

Introduction to Micah

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of the Book of Micah

1. God promises to punish the northern and the southern kingdoms (1:1–16)
2. The guilt of those who take advantage of others
 - The guilt of the rich who oppress the poor (2:1–11)
 - Promise of deliverance and restoration (2:12–13)
 - Condemnation of rulers, priests and prophets (3:1–12) -Yahweh's victory for all Israel
 - Yahweh's kingdom will rule over all the nations (4:1–10)
 - Israel will first be destroyed, and then will be victorious over its enemies (4:11–13)
 - Messiah will come and shepherd his flock and devastate the nations who fought against him (5:1–6)
 - Messiah will destroy everything that harmed his people (5:7–15)
3. Yahweh's case against Israel
 - Yahweh reminds Israel when he led them out of slavery in Egypt (6:1–5)
 - Israel's punishment, and true repentance (6:6–16)
4. The misery of Israel and their restoration
 - The brokenness and misery of Israel (7:1–7)
 - The coming together of nations in Israel (7:8–13)
 - The incomparable view of Yahweh who restores and gives grace (7:14–20)

What is the Book of Micah about?

The Book of Micah is a collection of many prophetic pronouncements. Micah repeated many of the great prophetic themes in Isaiah. He began his ministry in the kingdom of Israel and then moved to the kingdom of Judah. Micah warned of the pending attacks of Assyria and the coming fall of both kingdoms. Micah condemned injustice and immorality. He denounced those who did not work for a living and he renounced the false prophets who were giving Israel and Judah a sense of false security, by telling them that they were safe and that Yahweh would protect and deliver them.

Micah appealed to the people to live righteous and holy lives because of their connection with Yahweh. Their sins were evidence that they were not worshipping and serving Yahweh. The way they lived their lives, especially how they treated their fellow countrymen, proved the failure of their faith and showed that they had lost their love for Yahweh. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#), [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#), [righteous](#), [righteousness](#), [holy](#), [holiness](#) and [faith](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

Translators may decide to translate the traditional title “The Book of Micah” in a way that is clearer to the readers. They may decide to call it, “The Sayings of Micah.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Who wrote Micah?

Micah probably wrote this book. Micah lived at the same time as Isaiah and Hosea (in the mid to late 8th century BC) during the reigns of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts**Who is the deliverer Micah mentions?**

Micah frequently mentions a king who will deliver the people. While he is not directly mentioned to be the Messiah, it becomes clear that the person Micah mentions is the Messiah, the descendant of David who will rule forever. (See: [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#) and [Christ, Messiah](#))

Were the Israelites required to offer sacrifices or live holy lives to please Yahweh?

While much of the Old Testament focuses on offering sacrifices according to the law of Moses, Micah explains to the people that Yahweh is only pleased when the people offer these sacrifices in faith. Without faith sacrifices become empty religious practices. True faith will result in the people living just lives. (See: [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God’s law](#), [law of Yahweh](#) and [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#))

Part 3: Important Translation Issues**Why does Micah 1:10-16 sound unusual?**

This passage sounds unusual because of its construction in Hebrew, called a play on words. The names of the cities are used to describe their destruction. “Lachish will be lashed” is an example of this type of construction. This is a poetic element that might not correspond to the actual way they will be punished.

What does a translator need to know before translating Micah?

Micah does not frequently explain the historical context of his prophecies. This may result in the translator’s failure to understand implicit information unless they have a solid understanding of the time of Micah’s ministry. It is therefore suggested that translators have a good understanding of the history of the kingdoms of Israel and Judah. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

How do I translate passages where the speaker or addressee is not mentioned explicitly?

Micah often fails to mention who is speaking or who is being addressed. The context of the quote will often help the reader to understand who is speaking or being addressed. It is acceptable to make this information explicit so the reader can more easily understand it. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

How should the text of Micah be formatted?

The ULB tries to replicate the same poetic format as the Hebrew text. Many languages will be capable of replicating this but some languages will not be capable of doing this. The poetic portions of the text have been set apart through the use of indentation. With the exception of the first verse, the entire book is indented because the book is written as a series of poetic prophecies.

Micah 01 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Micah is written mainly in a poetic form. Most of the prophets wrote to either the Northern Kingdom or the Southern Kingdom. Micah wrote to both of them at times without clear distinction, as he did in this chapter.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

City Names

This passage sounds unusual in English because of its construction in Hebrew. It contains several “puns” or “plays on words.” The names of the cities are used to describe their destruction. “Lachish will be lashed” is an example of this type of construction. This poetic element might metaphors describing the actual way they will be punished. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Micah 01:01 Notes](#)
- [Micah intro](#)

Micah 1:1**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh gave Micah, who was from Moresheth in Judah, these messages in visions about Samaria and Jerusalem during the time when Jotham, and then Ahaz, and then Hezekiah were the kings of Judah.

ULB:

¹ This is the word of Yahweh that came to Micah the Morashtite in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, which he saw concerning Samaria and Jerusalem.

translationNotes**General Information:**

God speaks through Micah to the people of Israel using poetry. (See: [Parallelism](#))

the word of Yahweh that came

This idiom is used to explain that a God gave a message to someone. AT: “the message that Yahweh spoke” (See: [Idiom](#))

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

the Morashtite

This means he is from Moresheth which is a town in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah

“when Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah were kings of Judah”

which he saw

“which he heard in a vision”

translationWords

- word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures
- Yahweh
- Micah
- Jotham
- Ahaz
- Hezekiah
- king
- Judah
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Jerusalem

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 1 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 1:2-4**UDB:**

² You people everywhere on the earth, pay attention to this.
Yahweh our God is accusing you from his holy temple in heaven.

³ He will come down from heaven
and walk over the high places where you worship idols.

⁴ It will be as though the mountains will melt under his feet
as wax melts in front of a fire,
and as water disappears
when it rushes down into a valley.

ULB:

² Listen, all you peoples.
Listen, earth, and all that is in you.
Let the Lord Yahweh be a witness against you,
the Lord from his holy temple.

³ Look, Yahweh comes out of his place;
he will come down and tread
on the high places of the earth.

⁴ The mountains will melt under him;
the valleys will break apart,
like wax before fire,
like waters that are poured down a steep place.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah 1:2-7 is about God's judgment on Samaria.

Listen, all you peoples. Listen, earth, and all that is in you

This begins Micah's prophecy. Micah speaks to the people of Samaria as if all the people of the earth and even the earth itself were able to hear him. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

he will come down and tread on the high places of the earth

Micah speaks as if Yahweh were a mighty soldier coming down from heaven and beginning to march on top of the mountains. (See: [Metaphor](#))

he will ... tread

“he will ... march”

the high places of the earth

“the high mountains”

The mountains will melt under him; the valleys will break apart, like wax before fire, like waters that are poured down a steep place

Micah speaks as if Yahweh were a hot, solid object that melted the earth as it moved. AT: “He will crush the mountains and the valleys as he marches over them; he will destroy them, and they will completely disappear” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God](#)
- [witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses](#)
- [holy, holiness](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [high places](#)
- [fire](#)
- [water, waters](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 1 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 1:5**UDB:**

⁵ Those things will happen because of the terrible sins that the people of Israel, the descendants of Jacob, have committed.

But it was the people of the city of Samaria who persuaded all the people of Israel to sin.
And it was because the people of Jerusalem set up altars to worship their gods
that the other people of Judah thought they should also worship idols on the hilltops.

ULB:

⁵ All this is because of the Jacob's transgression,
and because of the sins of the house of Israel.

What is Jacob's transgression?

Is it not Samaria?

What is Judah's high place?

Is it not Jerusalem?

translationNotes**because of the sins of the house of Israel**

The word "house" is a metonym for the family that lives in the house, in this case the people of Israel. AT: "because the people of Israel have sinned against me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

All this is

"The Lord will come and judge"

What is Jacob's transgression?

The name "Jacob" is a metonym for those of his descendants who live in the northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Is it not Samaria?

Here "Samaria" is a metonym for the evil activities that take place there. Micah uses a question to emphasize that the people know what the truth is. This can be translated as a statement. AT: "You know that it is Samaria." (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

What is Judah's high place?

Here "high place" is a synecdoche for the entire system of idol worship. "Judah" is a metonym for the people who live there. AT: "Where do the people of Judah go to worship idols?" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Is it not Jerusalem?

Here "Jerusalem" is a metonym for the evil activities that take place there. Micah uses a question to emphasize that the people know what the truth is. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: "You know that it is Jerusalem." (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

translationWords

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [Judah, kingdom of Judah](#)
- [high places](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 1 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 1:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ Yahweh says this: "I will cause Samaria to become a heap of rubble;
it will be only a field for planting vineyards.

I will cause the stones of its buildings to roll down into the valley.

I will destroy the buildings down to their foundations.

⁷ I will make others smash the idols in Samaria to pieces.

The gifts given to prostitutes at the temples of their idols will be burned in fire.

Because people paid prostitutes there,

their enemies will take away those idols and sell them to pay prostitutes in other countries.

ULB:

⁶ "I will make Samaria a heap of ruins in the field,
a place for planting vineyards,
and I will pour her stones down into the valley
and I will uncover her foundations.

⁷ All her carved figures will be broken to pieces,
and all her gifts that she received will be burned with fire,
and I will destroy all her idols.

Since she gathered her gifts from the wages of prostitutes,
they will become the wages of prostitutes again."

translationNotes**I will make**

Here "I" refers to Yahweh.

Samaria ... her stones ... her foundations ... her carved figures ... her gifts that she received ... her idols ... she gathered her gifts ... they will become

Yahweh speaks of Samaria as if the city were a woman. AT: "Samaria ... its stones ... the foundations of the buildings in the city ... the carved figures in the city ... the gifts that people gave to the temple in the city ... the idols in the city ... the people of the city became rich ... the gifts will become" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will pour her stones

Here “her” refers to the city of Samaria.

All her carved figures will be broken to pieces

This can be translated in active form. AT: “I will break all her carved figures to pieces” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all her gifts ... will be burned with fire

This can be translated in active form. AT: “I will burn with fire all the gifts that she received” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

she received

“people gave her”

Since she gathered her gifts from the wages of prostitutes, they will become the wages of prostitutes again

Yahweh speaks of the people giving gifts to idols as if the people were hiring prostitutes. When the Assyrians destroy Samaria, they will take to Assyria the gifts the people of Samaria gave to their idols and give them as gifts to their own idols. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

translationWords

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [stone, stones, stoning](#)
- [foundation, founded](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [gift, gifts](#)
- [idol, idolatrous](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [prostitute, harlot, whore](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 1 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 1:8-10**UDB:**

⁸ Because Samaria will be destroyed, I will weep and wail.

I will walk around barefoot and naked.

I will howl like a jackal

and screech like an owl.

⁹ I will lament because Samaria will be completely destroyed;

nothing can save that city.

But the same thing will happen to Judah.

It is as though the enemy army had already reached the city gates of Jerusalem,
the main city where my people live.

¹⁰ Do not tell that to our enemies in the city of Gath in Philistia!

Do not cry, or the people there will find out what is happening.

Instead, just roll on the ground in Beth Leaphrah.

ULB:

⁸ For this reason I will lament and wail;

I will go barefoot and naked;

I will wail like the jackals

and mourn like owls.

⁹ For her wound is incurable,

for it has come to Judah.

It has reached the gate of my people,
to Jerusalem.

¹⁰ Do not tell about it in Gath;

do not weep at all.

At Beth Leaphrah I roll myself in the dust.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah 1:8-16 is about God's judgment on Judah.

I will lament

Here “I” refers to Micah.

I will lament and wail

“Lament” refers to the inner feeling of sadness, and “wail” refers to the activity of making a loud, sad sound.

I will go barefoot and naked

This is a sign of extreme mourning and distress. Another possible meaning is “I will look like someone has taken off my clothes; I will be naked”

naked

probably wearing only a loincloth

like the jackals ... like owls

Jackals and owls live in wastelands, and their loud cries sound like people wailing or weeping. (See: [Simile](#))

For her wound is incurable

Here “her” refers to the city of Samaria. This means nothing can stop the enemy army from destroying the people who live there. (See: [Metaphor](#))

for it has come to Judah

Micah uses contagious disease as a metaphor for the army that Yahweh has sent to judge Samaria. Here “it” refers to the “wound,” that is, to the army that God will use to punish Samaria. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Beth Leaphrah

You may want to make a footnote saying, “The name of this city means ‘house of dust.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

I roll myself in the dust

People under God’s judgment are expressing their grief in a strong way. AT: “I roll myself on the ground” or “I roll myself in the mud” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

translationWords

- lament, laments, lamentation
- mourn, mourning
- Judah
- gate, gate bar
- Jerusalem
- Gath

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 1 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 1:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ You people who live in Shaphir,
naked and ashamed, you will be taken to another country.

You people in Beth Ezel should mourn,
because no one from Zaanan will go out to help you.

¹² The people of Maroth
are anxiously waiting for good things to happen to them.

But I will make terrible things to happen to them,
and they will soon happen at the gates of Jerusalem.”

ULB:

¹¹ Pass by, inhabitants of Shaphir,
in nakedness and shame.

The inhabitants of Zaanan do not come out.

Beth Ezel mourns,
for their protection is taken away.

¹² For the inhabitants of Maroth wait anxiously for good news,
because disaster has come down from Yahweh
to the gates of Jerusalem.

translationNotes**General Information:**

The meanings of the names of the villages is important to Micah here. You may want to include the meanings of the names of the places in a footnote.

Shaphir

The name of this city sounds like one meaning “beautiful.” It contrasts with “nakedness and shame.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in nakedness and shame

This idiom makes explicit that the people will be totally naked. AT: “totally naked and ashamed” (See: [Idiom](#))

Zaanan

The name of this city means “go out.” They are too afraid to go out and help.

Beth Ezel

The name of this city means “house of taking away.”

for their protection is taken away

This can be translated in active form. AT: “for I have taken away everything that might protect them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Maroth

The name of this city means “bitterness.”

disaster has come down from Yahweh

The abstract noun “disaster” is spoken of here as a solid object rolling down a hill. It can be translated as a verb. AT: “Yahweh has caused bad things to happen” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 1 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 1:13-14**UDB:**

¹³ You people in the city of Lachish,

hitch your horses to pull the chariots in which you can ride to flee from your enemies.

The Israelite people rebelled against Yahweh,

and you imitated them,

and that caused the people of Jerusalem to start sinning, too.

¹⁴ You people of Judah, send a farewell gift to the people of Moresheth,

because their enemies will soon destroy it.

The kings of Israel will soon find out that the people of the town of Akzib will disappoint them.

ULB:

¹³ Harness the chariot to the team of horses, inhabitants of Lachish.

You, Lachish, were the beginning of sin for the daughter of Zion,

for the transgressions of Israel were found in you.

¹⁴ So you will give a parting gift to Moresheth Gath;

the town of Akzib will disappoint the kings of Israel.

translationNotes**Lachish**

The name “Lachish” sounds like “to the chariots” in Hebrew. The people are hitching their chariots to flee, not fight. Lachish was the most important city after Jerusalem in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Irony](#))

the daughter of Zion

The word “daughter” is a metonym for the people of the city. AT: “the people of Zion” or “the people who live in Zion” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for the transgressions of Israel were found in you

This idiom can be translated in active form. AT: “for you disobeyed like the people of Israel did” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

Moresbeth Gath

You may want to add a footnote saying “The name ‘Moresbeth’ means ‘to depart.’ It is also similar in sound to the word for ‘fiancée.’” In this metaphor, Moresbeth is the bride that Assyria takes, and the “parting gift” is the dowry, the gift her family gives for her to take into the marriage. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Akzib

You may want to add a footnote saying “The name of this town sounds almost the same as the Hebrew expression for ‘deceitful thing.’”

translationWords

- [chariot](#)
- [horse](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Gath](#)
- [king](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 1 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 1:15-16**UDB:**

¹⁵ You people of Mareshah,

Yahweh will soon send someone to conquer your town.

It will be necessary for the great leaders of Israel to go and hide in the cave near Adullam.

¹⁶ You people of Judah, shave your heads and go into mourning,

because the children whom you love will soon go into exile.

ULB:

¹⁵ I will again bring a conqueror to you,

inhabitants of Mareshah;

the splendor of Israel will come to Adullam.

¹⁶ Shave your head

and cut off your hair

for the children in whom you delight.

Make yourself as bald as eagles,

for your children will go into exile from you.

translationNotes**I will again bring**

Here “I” refers to Yahweh.

Mareshah

You may want to make a footnote saying, “The name of this village sounds like the Hebrew word for ‘conqueror.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adullam

This is the name of a royal city in Philistia. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shave your head and cut off your hair

Israelites who were mourning would shave bald spots on their heads. Possible meanings are 1) “Shave larger spots than usual on your heads” or 2) “Cut off all your hair and shave your heads,” stating the events in the order in which they were to occur. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

eagles

This word can also be translated “vultures.”

translationWords

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [eagle](#)
- [exile, the Exile](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 01 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 1 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 02 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues using poetic forms in communicating that people who take advantage of others are guilty of sin and injustice. (See: [guilt](#), [guilty](#), [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Context

Micah does not frequently explain the historical context of his prophecies. This may result in the translator failing to understand implicit information. Additional research may be needed regarding the time period of Micah's ministry. Therefore, translators have a good understanding of the history of the kingdoms of Israel and Judah. (See: [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Links:

- [Micah 02:01 Notes](#)

Micah 2:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Terrible things will happen to you who lie awake at night,
planning to do wicked things.

Then you get up at dawn, and you do those things
as soon as you are able to do them.

² You want fields that belong to other people,
so you seize them;
you also take their houses.

You cheat people to get their homes,
taking away the property that belongs to their families.

ULB:

¹ Woe to those who plan iniquity,
to those who plan on their beds to do evil.
In the morning light they do it
because they have power.

² They desire fields and seize them;
they desire houses and take them.
They oppress a man and his house,
a man and his inheritance.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah speaks against the leaders in Israel who are taking advantage of the poor and not following God's commands.

They oppress a man

"They oppress any man they choose to oppress." This is a generalization. Micah is not speaking of one individual man here.

translationWords

- woe
- iniquity, iniquities
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- light
- power, powers
- house
- inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 2 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 2:3-5**UDB:**

³ Therefore, this is what Yahweh says:

”I will cause you people of Israel to experience disasters,
and you will not be able to escape from them.

You will no longer walk around proudly,

because when that happens, it will be a time of much trouble for you.

⁴ At that time, your enemies will make fun of you rich people;

they will ridicule you by singing this sad song about you:

’We Israelites are completely ruined;

Yahweh is taking our land from us,

and he will give it to those who capture us.”

⁵ So when it is the time for the land to be given back to you people who belong to Yahweh,

there will be no one alive among you rich families to receive back any of that land.

ULB:

³ Therefore Yahweh says this,

”Look, I am about to bring disaster against this clan,
from which you will not remove your necks.

You will not walk arrogantly,

for it will be an evil time.

⁴ In that day men will sing a song about you,

and lament with a wailing lamentation.

They will sing, ’We Israelites are completely ruined;

Yahweh changes the territory of my people.

How can he remove it from me?

He portions out our fields to traitors!”

⁵ Therefore, you rich people will have no descendants to divide up the territory by lot
in the assembly of Yahweh.

translationNotes**Look**

“Listen carefully” or “Pay attention”

disaster

See how you translated this in [Micah 1:12](#).

this clan

This “clan” refers to the entire community of Israel, whose rich people are oppressing the poor. The sins of the leaders are coming back on the whole nation.

from which you will not remove your necks

Yahweh speaks of punishing the people as if he were putting a yoke around their necks. AT: “from which you will not be able to escape” (See: [Metaphor](#))

sing a song about you

“sing a song to make fun of you”

lament with a wailing lamentation

“they will cry loudly.” They are pretending to mourn, as if those they love have died. (See: [Irony](#))

We Israelites ... to traitors

This is the song that the enemies will sing to make fun of the Israelites and laugh as the Israelites suffer. (See: [Irony](#))

How can he remove it from me?

The enemy mocks the surprise the rich leaders of Israel feel because God has taken their land and given it to someone else just as they had taken the land from the poor. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: “How wrong he is to take it from me!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

Therefore, you rich people will have no descendants to divide up the territory by lot in the assembly of Yahweh

Possible meanings are 1) Micah looks forward to a time after the exile when those who return will divide up the land or 2) he is speaking of a custom of his time when the tribe or clan would divide up their land and give it to individuals.

translationWords

- Yahweh
- clan
- walk, walks, walked, walking
- arrogant
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- adversary, enemy
- lament, laments, lamentation
- ruin, ruins
- people of God, my people
- lots, casting lots
- assembly, assemble

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 2 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 2:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ The people who heard me say that replied to me,

”Do not prophesy such things!

Do not say that Yahweh is going to humiliate us by causing us to experience disasters!”

⁷ But you people talk like that!

You say that Yahweh never gets angry,

and that he never really punishes us.”

Of course, what I say certainly helps those who live in the right way.

⁸ But Yahweh says,

”Recently my people have been acting toward me like an enemy.

You rich people refuse to return the coats of those who have borrowed money from you,

the coats they gave you to promise that they would repay their debts.

You take their coats without warning, surprising them as much as soldiers returning from war would be surprised by attacks instead of safety at home.

ULB:

⁶ “Do not prophesy,”

they say.

”They must not prophesy these things;

reproaches must not come.”

⁷ Should it really be said, house of Jacob,

”Is the Spirit of Yahweh angry?

Are these really his deeds?”

Do not my words do good

to anyone who walks uprightly?

⁸ Lately my people have risen up like an enemy.

You strip the robe, the garment, from those who pass by unsuspectingly,

as soldiers return from war to what they think is safety.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah speaks to false prophets, as well as to the rich who have abused their power.

Do not prophesy

The speakers are speaking to Micah and to others, so this is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

they say

“the people of Israel say”

They must not prophesy

“The prophets must not prophesy”

reproaches must not come

Reproach is spoken of as if it were a robber chasing a person. It can be translated as a verb. AT: “we will not allow you to reproach us” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Should it really be said ... “Is the Spirit ... his deeds?”

Micah is scolding the Israelites by using this question. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “You know that you do not need to ask ... ‘Is the Spirit ... his deeds?’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

house of Jacob

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Jacob’s descendants. AT: “descendants of Jacob” (See: [Metonymy](#))

said ... “Is the Spirit of Yahweh angry? Are these really his deeds?”

Possible meanings are 1) the people really do not know if they are seeing Yahweh act. AT: “asked ... ‘Is the Spirit of Yahweh angry? Are these really his deeds?’” or 2) the people do not believe that Yahweh is really punishing them. These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. AT: “said ... ‘The Spirit of Yahweh is not really angry. These are not really his deeds.’” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Do not my words do good to anyone who walks uprightly?

Micah uses a question to teach the people. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “My message does good to those who walk uprightly.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

my people

This refers to either 1) Micah's people or 2) Yahweh's people.

You strip the robe, the garment, from those who pass by unsuspectingly

Possible meanings are 1) the wicked rich people are literally stealing robes from the poor or 2) creditors are keeping the outer garments of the poor who come to borrow money and give the garment as assurance they will repay. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [reproach](#)
- [house](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [word, words](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [robe](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 2 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 2:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ You have forced women to leave their nice homes,
and you have stolen from their children forever the blessings that I wanted to give them.

¹⁰ So get up and leave here!

This is not a place where you can rest and be safe,
because you have defiled it.

I will make sure it will be completely destroyed.

¹¹ You people want a prophet who will lie to you,
saying, 'I will preach that you should drink plenty of wine and other alcoholic drinks!'
That is the kind of prophet who would please you."

ULB:

⁹ You drive the women belonging to my people from their pleasant houses;
you take my blessing from their young children forever.

¹⁰ Get up and leave,
for this is not a place where you can stay,
because of its uncleanness;
it is destroyed with complete destruction.

¹¹ If someone comes to you in a spirit of falsehood and lies and says,
"I will prophesy to you about wine and strong drink,"
he would be considered to be a prophet for this people.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to the wicked rich people in Israel.

you take my blessing from their young children forever

This refers, in general, to blessings God has given to his people. It might refer to 1) being landowners in Israel, 2) a promising future or 3) to the children's fathers, farmers who worked hard to establish the nation.

my blessing

Micah speaks as if he were Yahweh.

it is destroyed with complete destruction

This can be translated in active form. AT: “I will completely destroy it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

comes to you ... will prophesy to you

Micah is speaking to the people of Judah, so both instances of “you” are plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

he would be considered

This can be translated in active form. AT: “the people would consider him” or “you would consider him” (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- cast out, drive out, throw out
- people of God, my people
- bless, blessed, blessing
- forever
- unclean
- spirit, spirits, spiritual
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- strong drink

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 2 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 2:12-13**UDB:**

¹² "But some day, you descendants of Jacob, I will bring back from exile the Israelite people who have survived.

I will gather you together

like a shepherd gathers his sheep into a pen,

and there will be many of you in your land.

¹³ Your leader will enable them to leave the countries where they have been exiled;

he will lead them out of the gates of their enemies' cities,

back to your own country.

Your king will lead them;

it is I, Yahweh, who will be their king!"

ULB:

¹² I will surely assemble all of you, Jacob.

I will surely gather the remnant of Israel.

I will bring them together like sheep in a fold,

like a flock in the midst of their pasture.

There will be a loud noise because of the multitude of people.

¹³ Someone who breaks open their way for them will go ahead of them.

They break through the gate and go out;

their king will pass on before them.

Yahweh will be at their head.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking. At the end of this chapter, Yahweh shows himself to be a shepherd who protects his people. He may especially be addressing those in Jerusalem who have returned from Assyria.

all of you, Jacob

Micah is speaking to some of the descendants of Jacob, so the word “you” is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Someone who breaks open their way ... Yahweh will be at their head.

This is a picture of a king leading his people out of an enclosed city.

translationWords

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [gate, gate bar](#)
- [king](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [head](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 2 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 03 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Justice

An unjust society was considered sinful. It was considered to be against the law of Moses. If these kingdoms did not have justice, they were not obedient to Yahweh. (See: [unjust](#), [unjustly](#), [injustice](#), [sin](#), [sins](#), [sinned](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#), [law](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#) and [just](#), [justice](#), [justly](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphors

There are vivid pictures used in this chapter which show how the leaders of the people were treating the Israelites. These situations are absurd unless taken as a metaphor. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Links:

- [Micah 03:01 Notes](#)

Micah 3:1-3

UDB:

¹ Then I said, "You Israelite leaders, listen to what I say!

You should certainly know what things are right to do
and what things are wrong,

² but you hate what is good

and love what is evil.

You act like butchers:

it is as though you strip the skin off my people

and tear the flesh from their bones.

³ It is as though you chop them into pieces like meat to be cooked in a pot.

ULB:

¹ I said, "Now listen,

you leaders of Jacob

and rulers of the house of Israel:

Is it not right for you to understand justice?

² You who hate good

and love evil,

you who tear off their skin,

their flesh from their bones—

³ you who also eat the flesh of my people,

and tear their skin off,

break their bones,

and chop them in pieces,

just like meat for a pot,

just like meat in a cauldron.

translationNotes

General Information:

Chapter 3 focuses on the corrupt leaders in Israel.

I said

Here “I” refers to Micah.

Is it not right for you to understand justice?

Micah is scolding the leaders. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. AT: “You act as though you think it is wrong for you to understand justice.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

hate good and love evil

These nominal adjectives can be translated as adjectives. AT: “hate everything that is good and love everything that is evil” (See: [Nominal Adjectives](#))

you who tear off their skin, their flesh from their bones ... just like meat in a cauldron

A butcher cutting up animals into meat is a metaphor for the leaders being cruel to the poor. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [house](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [love, loves, loving, loved](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 3 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 3:4**UDB:**

⁴ Then, when you have troubles, you plead to Yahweh to help you,
but he will not answer you.

At that time, he will turn his face away from you
because of the evil things that you have done.”

ULB:

⁴ Then you rulers will cry out to Yahweh,
but he will not answer you.
He will hide his face from you at that time,
because you have done evil deeds.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah continues speaking.

cry out to Yahweh

“shout to Yahweh for help”

he will not answer you

“he will not do what you ask him to do”

He will hide his face from you

Hiding the face is a metaphor for refusing to listen. AT: “He will turn his face away from you and cover it” or “You will see that he has no desire to help you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- ruler, rule
- Yahweh
- face
- evil, wicked, wickedness
- works, deeds, work, acts

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 3 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 3:5-7**UDB:**

⁵ This is what Yahweh says

about your false prophets who are deceiving the people:

”If someone gives them food,

those prophets say that things will go well for him.

But they declare that I will punish anyone who does not give them food.

⁶ So now it is as though night will descend on you prophets;

you will not receive any more visions.

It is as though the sun will set for you;

the time when you are greatly honored will end.

⁷ Then you seers will be disgraced;

you will cover your faces because you will be ashamed,

because when you ask me what will happen, there will be no answer from me.”

ULB:

⁵ Yahweh says this,

”As for the prophets who lead my people astray,

if one gives them something to eat,

they proclaim, ‘Peace.’

But if he puts nothing in their mouths,

they dedicate themselves to wage war on him.

⁶ Therefore, it will be night for you with no vision for you;

it will be dark so that you will do no divination.

The sun will go down on the prophets,

and the day will be dark on them.

⁷ The seers will be put to shame,

and the diviners will be confused.

All of them will cover their lips,

for there is no answer from me.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah continues to speak judgment against false prophets.

who lead my people astray

Walking on a good path is a metaphor for obeying God. Going astray from the path is a metaphor for disobeying God, in this case perhaps without knowing it. AT: “who lead my people to disobey me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

if one gives them something to eat, they proclaim, ‘Peace.’

Micah is using a metaphor to describe a situation that actually happens. The phrase “something to eat” is an ironic way of speaking of a small payment. AT: “they tell people who pay them even a small amount that things will go well for those people.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Irony](#))

if he puts nothing in their mouths, they dedicate themselves to wage war on him

Micah is using a metaphor to describe a situation that actually happens. The phrase “puts nothing in their mouths” is an ironic exaggeration for not giving what they want. AT: “they do all they can to destroy people who pay them too little” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Irony](#))

it will be night for you ... the day will be dark on them

Darkness is a metaphor for Yahweh not speaking to the prophets. (See: [Metaphor](#))

no vision for you

“you will no longer see visions”

The seers will be put to shame, and the diviners will be confused

This can be translated in active form. AT: “I will cause the seers to be ashamed, and I will confuse the diviners” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

All of them will cover their lips

Here “lips” represents speaking. AT: “They shall no longer speak” (See: [Metonymy](#))

there is no answer from me

“I will be silent”

translationWords

- Yahweh
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- people of God, my people
- vision
- darkness
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- shame, shameful, ashamed

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 3 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 3:8**UDB:**

⁸ But as for me, I am full of God's power,
 power from the Spirit of Yahweh.
 I am just and strong
 and declare to the Israelite people
 that they have sinned and rebelled against Yahweh.

ULB:

⁸ But as for me, I am full of power by the Spirit of Yahweh,
 and am full of justice and might,
 to declare to Jacob his transgression,
 and to Israel his sin.

translationNotes**But as for me**

Here “me” refers to Micah, a true prophet, setting himself apart from the false prophets.

I am full of power by the Spirit of Yahweh, and am full of justice and might

Micah speaks of himself as if he were a container into which Yahweh were pouring a liquid. AT: “the Spirit of Yahweh has given me power, justice, and might” or “the Spirit of Yahweh has enabled me to be strong, to declare what justice is, and to be mighty” (See: [Metaphor](#))

to declare to Jacob his transgression, and to Israel his sin

Here “Jacob” and “Israel” are metonyms for Jacob's descendants. Micah uses both names to emphasize that all of his descendants are guilty of sin. The abstract nouns “transgression” and “sin” can be translated using verbs. AT: “to declare to Jacob's descendants that they have broken Yahweh's law; I am telling the people of Israel that they have all sinned” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- power, powers
- Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit
- just, justice, justly
- mighty, might
- declare, declaration
- Jacob, Israel
- transgress, transgresses, transgression
- Israel, Israelites
- sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 3 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 3:9-11**UDB:**

⁹ You leaders of the people of Israel, listen to this:

You hate it when people do what is just,
and when people say what is true,
you say it is false.

¹⁰ It is as though you are building houses in Jerusalem on foundations
that consist of murdering people and doing what is corrupt.

¹¹ Your leaders make favorable decisions only if they receive bribes.

Your priests teach people only if those people pay them well.

Your false prophets require people to pay them to tell people what will happen to them in the future.

Those prophets say, "Yahweh is telling us what we should say,
and we say that we will not experience any disasters."

ULB:

⁹ Now listen to this,
you leaders of the house of Jacob,
and rulers of the house of Israel,
you who detest justice,
and pervert everything right.

¹⁰ You build Zion with blood
and Jerusalem with iniquity.

¹¹ Your leaders judge for a bribe,
your priests teach for a price,
and your prophets do divination for money.

Yet you rely on Yahweh and say,

"Is not Yahweh with us?

No evil will come on us."

translationNotes**house of Jacob**

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Jacob’s descendants. AT: “descendants of Jacob” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the house of Israel

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. In this case it refers to Israel’s descendants, who had become the nation of Israel. AT: “descendants of Israel” or “you Israelites” (See: [Metonymy](#))

detest

strongly dislike

You build Zion with blood and Jerusalem with iniquity

“Blood” is a metonym for murder, and “Zion” and “Jerusalem” are spoken of as if they were buildings. Micah speaks of the rich murdering people and sinning in other ways as if those activities were the bricks and wood with which people use to build houses. AT: “You commit murder and other horrible sins as you work to make Zion and Jerusalem great!” or “You commit murder as you worship in Zion, and you commit other sins as you get rich in Jerusalem!” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Is not Yahweh with us?

The leaders strongly believe that Yahweh is with them. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “We know that Yahweh is with us!” or “We know that Yahweh will help us do what we want to do!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

evil

See how you translated “disaster” in [Micah 1:12](#).

translationWords

- [house](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)

- blood
- Jerusalem
- iniquity, iniquities
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- bribe
- priest, priests, priesthood
- prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, wickedness

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 3 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 3:12**UDB:**

¹² Because of what you leaders do,

Mount Zion will be plowed like a field;

it will become a heap of ruins.

The top of the hill, where the temple is now, will be covered with trees.

ULB:

¹² Therefore, because of you,

Zion will become a plowed field,

Jerusalem will become a heap of rubble,

and the hill of the temple will become a thicket.

translationNotes**because of you**

Here “you” refers to the priests, prophets, and leaders ([Micah 3:11](#)).

Zion will become a plowed field ... and the hill of the temple will become a thicket

“Zion” and “the hill of the temple” refer to the same place. When a farmer plows a field, he turns over all the dirt and uproots all the plants that are growing there. A thicket is so full of bushes that no one can use it for anything. These two metaphors cannot be literally true at the same time, but they emphasize that Yahweh will allow the invaders to completely destroy the temple area. (See: [Metaphor](#))

a plowed field

“a field that a farmer has plowed”

a thicket

a place where many small woody plants grow

translationWords

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [temple](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 3 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 04 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the poetic form to communicate that God will one day restore Israel. (See: [restore](#), [restores](#), [restored](#), [restoration](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Remnant

Micah speaks about a future hope and a remnant who will return to their homeland. Verses 1-8 are a vision of the future when God will restore Israel to its former glory. These verses will give hope to those about to be removed from their homeland. (See: [remnant](#))

Links:

- [Micah 04:01 Notes](#)

Micah 4:1**UDB:**

¹ Yahweh says that some day his temple will be on top of a mountain,
 and that mountain will be the most important one on the earth;
 it will be as though it was higher than all the hills,
 and huge groups of people from all over the world will come there to worship.

ULB:

¹ But in the last days it will come about
 that the mountain of Yahweh's house
 will be established over the other mountains.
 It will be exalted above the hills,
 and peoples will stream to it.

translationNotes**the mountain ... other mountains**

Yahweh making the temple mount higher than all other mountains and hills is a metaphor for making his temple the most important place on earth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

the mountain of Yahweh's house will be established

This can be translated in active form. AT: "Yahweh will establish the mountain on which his temple is built" or "Yahweh will make the mountain on which his temple is built great" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

over the other mountains

Mount Zion will be the most important of all the mountains. It might also mean that this mountain will become the highest in the world, and not only in the region where it is located.

It will be exalted above the hills

This can be translated in active form. AT: "Yahweh will exalt it above the hills" or "Yahweh will make it higher than the hills" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

peoples will stream to it

A stream flows continually to one place from many directions. Many people come to the temple mount from different directions. AT: “the people of the nations will flow like a stream to it” or “the people of the nations will go to it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [last day, last days, latter days](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 4:2-3**UDB:**

² People from many nations will say to each other,

”Let us go to the mountain where Yahweh is,
to the temple where we can worship the God whom Jacob worshiped.

There he will teach us how he wants us to conduct our lives,
and we will do what he wants us to do.”

Mount Zion is the place where he will teach people;
and people will go out from Jerusalem to tell others his messages.

³ Yahweh will settle disputes between many different people and groups who are fighting against each other,

and he will also settle disputes between powerful nations that are far away.

Then people will hammer their swords to cause them to become plow blades,
and hammer their spears to cause them to become pruning knives.

Armies of nations will no longer fight against armies of other nations,
and they will no longer train men how to fight in wars.

ULB:

² Many nations will go and say,

”Come, let us go up to the mountain of Yahweh,
to the house of the God of Jacob.

He will teach us his ways,
and we will walk in his paths.”

For from Zion the law will go out,
and the word of Yahweh from Jerusalem.

³ He will judge among many peoples
and will decide concerning numerous nations far away.

They will beat their swords into plowshares
and their spears into pruning hooks.

Nation will not lift up sword against nation,
nor will they train for war any longer.

translationNotes**Many nations**

The word “nations” is a metonym for the people of the nations. AT: “The people from many nations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Come

This is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

He will teach us his ways, and we will walk in his paths

Here “his ways” and “his paths” refer to what God wants the people to do. “Walk” means they will obey what he says. (See: [Metaphor](#))

from Zion the law will go out, and the word of Yahweh from Jerusalem

The law and the word going out is a metaphor for people hearing it and then being messengers to tell other people about it in other places. You may need to state the words omitted in the ellipsis. AT: “people will listen to the law in Zion and go out and tell others; they will listen to the word of Yahweh in Jerusalem and go out and tell others” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

plowshares

a blade that people use to dig into soil so they can plant seeds

pruning hooks

a metal tool that people use to cut off branches or stems from plants

will not lift up sword

will not threaten to start a war

translationWords

- [nation](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)
- [God](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)

- law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh
- word, words
- Jerusalem
- judge, judges, judgment, judgments
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- sword
- spear

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 4:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ Everyone will sit peacefully under his own grapevines,
and under his own fig trees;
no one will cause them to be afraid.

That is what will surely happen because Yahweh, commander of the angel armies, has said it.

⁵ Many of the people of other nations will worship their own gods,
but we will worship Yahweh our God always, forever.

ULB:

⁴ Instead, they will sit every person under his vine
and under his fig tree.

No one will make them afraid,
for the mouth of Yahweh of hosts has spoken.

⁵ For all the peoples walk,
each one, in the name of their god.

But we will walk in the name of Yahweh our God
forever and ever.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah continues describing the “last days” when people learn and obey Yahweh’s law.

they will sit every person under his vine and under his fig tree

Both the “vine” and the “fig tree” are symbols of prosperity. This phrase describes actions in which people live prosperously and in peace. If grapevines or fig trees are unknown you can translate this more generally. AT: “they will sit peacefully in their own gardens and fields” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for the mouth of Yahweh of hosts has spoken

The mouth is a synecdoche for the person. AT: “for Yahweh of hosts has spoken” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the peoples walk ... in the name of their god ... we will walk in the name of Yahweh

Walking on a path is a metaphor for living one's life. Walking in the name of someone is a metaphor for worshiping and obeying. AT: "the peoples ... worship and obey their god ... we will worship and obey Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [vine](#)
- [fig](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [god, gods, goddess](#)
- [God](#)
- [forever](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 4:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ Yahweh says, "There will soon be a time when I will gather the people whom I have punished,
who have been exiled,

all those whom I have caused to suffer much.

⁷ My people who did not die while they were exiled will become a strong nation again.

Then I, Yahweh, will be their king,

and I will rule from Jerusalem forever.

⁸ As for you people of Jerusalem,

you who guard all of my people as a shepherd guards his sheep from a tower,
you who live on Mount Zion will have great power again.

You people who live in Jerusalem will again rule as you did previously.

ULB:

⁶ "On that day"—this is Yahweh's declaration—

"I will assemble the lame

and gather the outcast,

those whom I have afflicted.

⁷ I will turn the lame into a remnant,

and the ones driven away into a strong nation,

and I, Yahweh, will reign over them on Mount Zion,

now and forever.

⁸ As for you, watchtower for the flock,

hill of the daughter of Zion—

to you it will come, your former dominion will be restored,

the kingdom that belongs to the daughter of Jerusalem.

translationNotes**On that day**

"at that time" or "when I do those things." These words refer to "the last days" (Micah 4:1). The word "day" can refer to a period of days or even years.

the lame

This refers to those who cannot walk well. Being lame is a synecdoche for having any form of disability. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

gather the outcast

“gather those whom I drove out of Jerusalem”

the ones driven away into a strong nation

This can be translated in active form. The words omitted by the ellipsis can be added. AT: “I will make the ones I drove away into a strong nation” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

As for you, watchtower for the flock, hill of the daughter of Zion—to you it will come, your former dominion

Micah speaks to the people of Jerusalem by speaking to the temple mount as if it could hear him. You may need to make explicit that Micah is giving his message to the people. AT: “As for the temple mount, the place from which Yahweh watches over you, his sheep, the place that Jerusalem’s people are most proud of—its former dominion will return” (See: [Apostrophe](#))

watchtower for the flock

The people of Jerusalem protecting the other people in surrounding areas is spoken of as if they were a shepherd in a watchtower watching over his flock. (See: [Metaphor](#))

daughter of Zion ... daughter of Jerusalem

The people who live in a place are spoken of as if the place is a mother and they are the daughter. AT: “people who live in Zion ... people who live in Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

hill

Some modern versions understand this Hebrew word to mean “fortress” or “stronghold” here.

to you it will come, your former dominion

The abstract noun “dominion” can be translated as a verb. AT: “you will rule over the nations as you did before” or “I will make you rule over the nations as you did before” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- afflict, affliction
- remnant
- cast out, drive out, throw out
- nation
- Yahweh
- reign
- Zion, Mount Zion
- forever
- watchtower, tower
- flock, herd
- kingdom
- Jerusalem

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 4:9-10

UDB:

⁹ So why are you wailing now?

Is it because you have no king?

Have all your wise people died?

You are weeping loudly like a woman who is giving birth to a baby.

¹⁰ Well, you people of Jerusalem should twist and groan as a woman who is having birth pains,
because now you must leave this city.

While you are traveling, you will set up tents in open fields at night;

you will go to live in Babylon.

But while you are there,

I, Yahweh, will rescue you;

I will free you from the power of your enemies.

ULB:

⁹ Now, why do you shout so loudly?

Is there no king among you?

Has your counselor died?

Is this why pain grips you like that of a woman in labor?

¹⁰ Be in pain

and labor to give birth,

daughter of Zion,

like a woman in labor.

For now you will you go out of the city,

live in the field,

and go to Babylon.

There you will be rescued.

There Yahweh will rescue you

from the hand of your enemies.

translationNotes**Now, why do you shout so loudly?**

Micah is mocking the people, trying to make them think about why God is dealing with them in this way. This question can be translated as a statement. AT: “Look at how you are shouting loudly.” or “Think carefully about why you are shouting loudly.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Is there no king among you? Has your counselor died? Is this why pain grips you like that of a woman in labor?

Micah continues to mock the people. These questions can be translated as statements. AT: “You have a king, but he is useless to you. All your wise people are still alive, but they have nothing wise to say to you. This is why you are weeping loudly like a woman who is giving birth to a baby.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Simile](#))

Be in pain ... like a woman in labor

Micah compares the suffering the people will experience when enemies force them away from their cities to the pain a woman experiences when giving birth to a baby. (See: [Simile](#))

There you will be rescued. There Yahweh will rescue you

Yahweh says the same thing in both active and passive forms to emphasize that he will do what he has said he will do. This can be translated in active form. AT: “There Yahweh will rescue you. There he will rescue you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the hand of your enemies

Possible meanings for the word “hand” are 1) it could be a metonym for the power that the hand exercises, AT: “the power of your enemies” or 2) it could be a synecdoche for the person. AT: “your enemies” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [king](#)
- [counsel, counselor, advice, advisor](#)
- [labor pains, in labor](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonian](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 4:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ Now the armies of many nations have gathered to attack you.

They are saying, 'Jerusalem must be destroyed!

We want to see this city when it becomes ruins!'"

¹² The prophet says, they do not know what Yahweh thinks;

and they do not understand what he is planning.

He will gather them and punish them

as farmers thresh grain on the ground.

ULB:

¹¹ Now many nations are assembled against you;

they say, 'Let her be defiled;

let our eyes gloat over Zion.'

¹² They do not know Yahweh's thoughts,

neither do they understand his plans,

for he has gathered them like sheaves for the threshing floor.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Jerusalem will defeat her enemies.

Let her be defiled

This can be translated in active form. AT: "Let us defile her" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

let our eyes gloat over Zion

The eye is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: "let us gloat over Zion" or "let us enjoy watching the invaders destroy Zion" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

for he has gathered them like sheaves for the threshing floor

The farmer puts his sheaves on his threshing floor just before he threshes them. In a similar way, Yahweh will soon destroy the nations. (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- [nation](#)
- [defile, be defiled](#)
- [Zion, Mount Zion](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [thresh, threshing](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 4:13**UDB:**

¹³ Yahweh says, "So, you people of Jerusalem, rise up and punish the nations who oppose you.

I will cause you to be very strong,
as if you had horns made of iron,
as if you had hooves made of bronze;
and you will crush many nations.

Then you will take from your enemies the valuable things that they have taken from other countries,

and I will cause you to dedicate those things to me, the one who is the Lord of all the people on the earth."

ULB:

¹³ Arise and thresh, daughter of Zion,
for I will make your horn to be iron,
and I will make your hooves to be bronze.

You will crush many peoples and you will devote their unjust wealth to Yahweh,
their wealth to the Lord of the whole earth."

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh presents the imagery of the threshing floor. (See: [Micah 4:12](#))

Arise and thresh, daughter of Zion ... your horn ... your hooves ... You will crush

All instances of "your" and "you," as well as the commands, refer to the "daughter of Zion" and so are singular and feminine. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Arise and thresh, daughter of Zion, for I will make your horn to be iron, and I will make your hooves to be bronze

Yahweh speaks of the people of Zion as if they were strong oxen about to thresh wheat and their enemies were the wheat. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

I will make your horn to be iron, and I will make your hooves to be bronze

If your reader is not familiar with oxen or iron or bronze, you can remove the metaphor. AT: “for I will make you able to defeat and destroy every enemy” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Translate Unknowns](#))

their unjust wealth

“the wealth they got by acting unjustly” or “the things they stole from other people”

their wealth

The abstract noun “wealth” can be translated as a verb. AT: “the things that they own” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [thresh, threshing](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [unjust, unjustly, injustice](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Lord](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 05 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Messiah

This chapter contains a prophecy explaining that the messiah was to be born in Bethlehem. This meaning is made clear in the New Testament. (See: [Micah 5:2](#), [prophet](#), [prophets](#), [prophecy](#), [prophecy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [Christ, Messiah](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Change in Personal Pronouns

Extra care must be taken in translating pronouns in this chapter. Sometimes “I” is a reference to the author and other times it is a reference to Yahweh. There is also a noticeable shift where the author stops speaking about the people as “you” and begins speaking about them as “we” or “us.”

Links:

- [Micah 05:01 Notes](#)

Micah 5:1**UDB:**

¹ You people of Jerusalem, gather your troops together.

Even though you have a wall around your city to protect it,
enemy soldiers are surrounding the city.

Soon they will strike your leader on his face with a rod.

ULB:

¹ Now come together in battle ranks,

daughter of soldiers;

the soldiers have set up a siege around city,

with a rod they will strike the judge of Israel

on the cheek. ^[1], some interpreters translate, referring to the pagan practice of cutting oneself while praying to idols. Also, some modern versions follow an ancient version that reads .

5:1 ^[1] Instead of *come together in battle ranks cut yourselves build up your fortifications*

translationNotes**daughter of soldiers**

The people of a city are spoken of as if they were a woman. The soldiers are attacking the city. AT: “people of the city, whom soldiers are attacking” (See: [Metaphor](#))

with a rod they will strike the judge of Israel on the cheek

The rod is a metonym for a greater man punishing a lesser man with a rod. To strike a man on the cheek was to insult him more than to harm him. AT: “Yahweh will punish the judge of Israel by having the invaders insult the judge of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

the judge of Israel

This irony describes the king as having lost so much of his power and authority that he is really only a judge. (See: [Irony](#))

translationWords

- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [rod](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 5 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 5:2-3**UDB:**

² But you people of Bethlehem in the district of Ephrathah,
even though your town is a very small one among all the towns in Judah,
someone who will rule Israel will be born in your town.

He will be someone whose family existed a very long time ago.

³ Now God will allow your enemies to conquer you, you people of Israel,
but it will be for only a short time,

like the short time that women have great pain while their babies are being born.

After that, your fellow countrymen who were exiled will return to their own country.

ULB:

² But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah,
even though you are small among the clans of Judah,
out of you one will come to me
to rule in Israel,
whose beginning is from ancient times,
from everlasting.

³ Therefore God will give them up,
until the time when she who is in labor bears a child,
and the rest of his brothers return to the people of Israel.

translationNotes**But you, Bethlehem Ephrathah**

Yahweh speaks to the people of Judah, and especially to the people of Bethlehem, as if he were speaking to the town of Bethlehem itself. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

Ephrathah

This is either the name of the area in which Bethlehem was situated or it is just another name for Bethlehem or it distinguishes this Bethlehem from another. Bethlehem is about six miles south of Jerusalem. It was the hometown of King David. Translators may add this footnote: "The name 'Ephrathah' means 'to be fruitful.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

even though you are small among the clans of Judah, out of you one will come

“even though other clans in Judah have more people in them, it is one of your people who will come”

will come to me

Here “me” refers to Yahweh.

whose beginning is from ancient times, from everlasting

This refers to the ruler descending from the ancient family of King David. The phrases “from ancient times” and “from everlasting” mean basically the same thing and emphasize how old this family line is. (See: [Doublet](#))

Therefore

“Because this ruler will come later”

will give them up

will abandon the people of Israel

until the time when she who is in labor bears a child

This refers to the time when the ruler is born, a limited time.

the rest of his brothers

“the rest of the ruler’s fellow Israelites,” who are in exile

translationWords

- [Bethlehem, Ephrathah](#)
- [clan](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [everlasting, eternal, eternity](#)
- [God](#)
- [labor pains, in labor](#)
- [children, child](#)
- [brother, brothers](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 5 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 5:4-5**UDB:**

⁴ And that a man who will rule there in Jerusalem will stand and lead his people well,
because Yahweh, his God, will cause him to be strong and greatly honored.

Then the people whom he rules will live in Jerusalem safely;

he will be greatly honored by people all over the earth

so no one will dare to attack Jerusalem.

⁵ And he will cause things to go well with his people.

When the army of Assyria attacks our country

and breaks through our fortresses,

we will appoint seven or eight leaders to lead our army to fight against them.

ULB:

⁴ He will stand

and shepherd his flock in the strength of Yahweh,

in the majesty of the name of Yahweh his God.

They will remain,

for then he will be great to the ends of the earth.

⁵ For this shall be the peace—

when the Assyrians come into our land,

and when they march against our fortresses,

then we will raise against them seven shepherds

and eight leaders over men.

translationNotes**General Information:**

These verses continue describing the ruler from Bethlehem.

He will stand and shepherd his flock in the strength of Yahweh

A shepherd, who feeds and protects his sheep, is a metaphor for the ruler, who will provide for and protect the people of Israel. AT: “Yahweh will give him the strength to lead his people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

in the majesty of the name of Yahweh his God

The person's name is a metonym for person's authority. AT: "and people will honor him because Yahweh his God has given him the authority to rule" (See: [Metonymy](#))

They will remain

the people of Israel will remain

remain

"live in safety"

he will be great to the ends of the earth

All people from every nation will give honor to Israel's ruler.

seven shepherds and eight leaders over men

Here "shepherds" is a metonym for "rulers," another way of saying "leaders over men." The phrase "seven ... and eight" is an idiom for "more than enough." AT: "enough, even more than enough, rulers" or "more than enough shepherds and leaders over men" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

translationWords

- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [majesty](#)
- [God](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [peace, peaceful](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)
- [raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose](#)
- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 5 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 5:6-7**UDB:**

⁶ With their swords our army will defeat the army of Assyria, whose capital Nimrod founded long ago. Our army will rule their cities.

So our army will rescue us from the Assyrian army
when they invade our country.

⁷ The descendants of Jacob who survive will be a blessing to the people of other nations
like dew and rain sent by Yahweh do good to the grass.

They will not trust in humans to help them;
instead, they will rely on Yahweh.

ULB:

⁶ They will shepherd the land of Assyria with the sword,
and the land of Nimrod in its entrances. ^[1], that is, in their gates. However, some modern versions suppose that a different Hebrew word was intended: .

He will rescue us from the Assyrians,
when they come into our land,
when they march inside our borders.

⁷ The remnant of Jacob will be in the midst of many peoples,
like dew from Yahweh,
like showers on the grass,
that do not wait for a man,
and they do not wait for the children of mankind.

5:6 ^[1]The Hebrew text has *in its entrances with a drawn sword*

translationNotes**They will shepherd the land of Assyria with the sword, and the land of Nimrod in its entrances**

The sword is a metonym for killing in war. Here the Israelites ruling over the Assyrians is spoken of ironically as if they were killing sheep instead of herding them. The land of Assyria is a

metonym for the people who live there. The entrances to cities were where official business took place. AT: “They will make war against the people of Assyria, and they will rule the cities of the land of Nimrod” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Irony](#) and [Metonymy](#))

They will shepherd the land of Assyria ... and the land of Nimrod

You may need to repeat the words omitted in the ellipsis. AT: “They will shepherd the land of Assyria ... and they will shepherd the land of Nimrod” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

land of Nimrod

This is another name for the land of Assyria. Nimrod was a hunter and early ruler. Translators may add this footnote: “The name ‘Nimrod’ means ‘rebellion.’” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He will rescue

The ruler will rescue

like dew from Yahweh, like showers on the grass

Dew and rain showers refresh the land and cause things to grow. The Israelites will cause the people among whom they live to live will. (See: [Simile](#))

grass, that do not wait for a man, and they do not wait for the children

“grass. It is not for a man that they wait, nor is it for the children.” It is Yahweh alone who causes dew and rain showers.

translationWords

- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [sword](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [people group, peoples, the people, a people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 5 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 5:8-9**UDB:**

⁸ In the midst of their enemies in many people groups,
the descendants of Jacob who remain alive will be like a lion among the other wild beasts of the forest,

like a strong young lion that attacks sheep in a flock,
and no one will be able to rescue their enemies.

⁹ You Israelites will defeat all your enemies
and completely destroy them.

ULB:

⁸ The remnant of Jacob will be among the nations,
among many peoples,

like a lion among the animals of the forest,
like a young lion among the flocks of sheep.

When he goes through them,
he will trample over them and tear them to pieces,
and there will be no one to save them.

⁹ Your hand will be lifted against your enemies,
and it will destroy them.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh promises that the Israelites who are alive after Yahweh has punished his people with war will completely defeat and rule over their enemies.

remnant of Jacob

descendants of Jacob who survive the war

among the nations, among many peoples

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that the “remnant of Jacob” will live in many different nations. (See: [Doublet](#))

like a lion among the animals of the forest, like a young lion among the flocks of sheep

Lions are able to kill and eat any wild animal of the forest, and they easily kill sheep. AT: “like the fiercest of wild animals, like a wild animal that kills helpless livestock” (See: [Simile](#))

When he goes through them

when the young lion goes through the flocks of sheep

will trample over them and tear

“will jump on them so they fall down, and then he will tear”

Your hand ... your enemies

The writer is speaking to Yahweh, so both instances of “your” are masculine singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Your hand will be lifted against your enemies

The hand is a metonym for the power that the hand exercises or a synecdoche for the whole person. To lift the hand is to exercise power. AT: “You will completely defeat your enemies” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

it will destroy them

The hand is a synecdoche for the whole person. AT: “you will destroy them” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- remnant
- Jacob, Israel
- nation
- people group, peoples, the people, a people
- lion
- flock, herd
- sheep, ram, ewe
- save, saves, saved, safe
- hand, right hand, to hand over
- adversary, enemy

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 5 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 5:10-11**UDB:**

¹⁰ Yahweh says,

”At that time, I will destroy you Israelite people’s horses that your soldiers use in war,
together with your chariots.

¹¹ I will tear down your city walls
and destroy all your fortified cities.

ULB:

¹⁰ “It will happen in that day”—this is Yahweh’s declaration—
”that I will destroy your horses from among you
and will demolish your chariots.

¹¹ I will destroy the cities in your land
and throw down all your strongholds.

translationNotes**in that day**

- “at that time” or “when I do those things.” These words refer to “the last days” ([Micah 4:1](#)). The word “day” can refer to a period of days or even years.

I will destroy your horses from among you and will demolish your chariots

The people of Israel used horses and chariots only in battle, and they may have traded for them with the godless nations around them. God did not want the people to trust in their weapons of war to protect them more than they trusted in him. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

your horses ... among you ... your chariots ... your land ... your strongholds

Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel as if they were one man. (See: [Forms of You](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [horse](#)
- [chariot](#)
- [stronghold, fortress, fortified](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 5 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 5:12-15**UDB:**

- ¹² I will get rid of all those among you who practice magic
and the fortune tellers.
- ¹³ I will destroy all your idols and stone pillars,
and then you will no longer bow down and worship things that you yourselves have made.
- ¹⁴ I will get rid of your poles that represent the goddess Asherah,
and I will also destroy all your idols.
- ¹⁵ Because I will be very angry,
I will also punish the people of all the nations who have not obeyed me.”

ULB:

- ¹² I will destroy the witchcraft in your hand,
and you will no longer have any diviners.
- ¹³ I will destroy your carved figures
and your stone pillars from among you.
You will no longer worship the workmanship of your hands.
- ¹⁴ I will uproot your Asherah poles from among you,
and I will destroy your cities.
- ¹⁵ I will execute vengeance in anger and wrath
on the nations that have not listened.”

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.

the witchcraft in your hand

Being in the “hand” represents the actions that the person does. AT: “the witchcraft that you do”
(See: [Metonymy](#))

your hand ... you will ... your carved ... your stone ... among you. You will ... your hands ... your Asherah ... among you ... your cities

Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel as if they were one man. (See: [Forms of You](#))

the workmanship of your hands

The abstract noun “workmanship” can be translated using the verb “make.” AT: “what your hands have made” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

will uproot your Asherah poles

Yahweh speaks of Asherah poles as if they were trees that he would pull out of the ground. AT: “will pull your Asherah poles out of the ground” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer](#)
- [image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure](#)
- [pillar, column](#)
- [worship](#)
- [Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth](#)
- [avenge, revenge, vengeance](#)
- [angry, anger](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [nation](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 5 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 06 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is written as a court case or lawsuit by Yahweh against His people. (See: [people of God, my people](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Names in Lawsuit

Moses, Aaron and Miriam are mentioned as witnesses for Yahweh and against Israel. Ahab and Omri are mentioned as kings who were evil and did not follow Yahweh. Obedience to the law of Moses is contrasted with disobedience to the law. (See: [witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses, evil, wicked, wickedness](#) and [law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh](#))

Links:

- [Micah 06:01 Notes](#)

Micah 6:1-2**UDB:**

¹ Pay attention to what Yahweh will say:

Micah says to Yahweh, "Stand up in court and accuse the Israelites.

Allow the hills and mountains to hear what you will say.

² The mountains must listen carefully to what Yahweh says about his people, so they can be witnesses.

Indeed, Yahweh has many things to accuse his people Israel about.

ULB:

¹ Now listen to what Yahweh says,

"Arise and state your case before the mountains;

let the hills hear your voice.

² Listen to Yahweh's lawsuit, you mountains,

and you enduring foundations of the earth.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,

and he will fight in court against Israel."

translationNotes**Now listen ... Listen to Yahweh's lawsuit**

Micah speaks to the people of Israel as if he were speaking to mountains that can hear him, so both instances of "listen" are plural. (See: [Apostrophe](#))

Arise ... state ... let ... your voice

Micah speaks to the people of Israel as if they were one man, so the commands and the word "your" are singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Arise and state your case before the mountains; let the hills hear your voice

Yahweh speaks as if he is in court and the mountains and hills are the judges. He commands the people of Israel to tell the judges why they have done what they did. (See: [Personification](#))

the mountains ... the hills ... enduring foundations of the earth

Micah is speaking to these things as if they are humans. Micah is using the mountains, hills, and foundations of the earth as an eternal witness against his people's idolatry. (See: [Personification](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Micah](#)
- [voice](#)
- [foundation, founded](#)
- [earth, earthly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 6 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 6:3-5**UDB:**

³ He says this: "My people, what have I done to cause trouble for you ?

What have I done to cause you to experience difficulties?

Answer me!

⁴ I did great things for your ancestors;

I brought them out of Egypt;

I rescued them from that land where they were slaves.

I sent Moses to lead them,

and his older brother Aaron and his older sister Miriam.

⁵ My people, think about when Balak, the king of Moab, requested Beor's son Balaam to curse your ancestors,

and think about what Balaam replied.

Think about how your ancestors crossed the Jordan River miraculously while they were traveling from Acacia to Gilgal.

Think about those things in order that you may know that I, Yahweh, do what is right."

ULB:

³ "My people, what have I done to you?

How have I wearied you?

Testify against me!

⁴ For I brought you up out of the land of Egypt

and rescued you out of the house of bondage.

I sent Moses, Aaron, and Miriam to you.

⁵ My people, remember what Balak king of Moab devised,

and how Balaam son of Beor answered him

as you went from Shittim to Gilgal,

so you may know the righteous acts of Yahweh."

translationNotes**General Information:**

This continues Yahweh's lawsuit against the people of Israel. (See: [Micah 6:1-2](#))

My people, what have I done to you? How have I wearied you? Testify against me!

God uses questions to emphasize that he is a good God, and he has done nothing to cause the people to stop worshipping him. AT: “My people, I have been good to you. I have done nothing to make you tired of me. If you think I have, testify against me, now.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to you ... wearied you? Testify ... brought you ... rescued you ... Miriam to you ... remember ... you went ... you may know

Yahweh speaks to the people as if they were one man, so all instances of “you” and all the commands are masculine singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

house of bondage

A house is a metaphor for a place in which one lives for a long time. The abstract noun “bondage” can be translated as “to be slaves.” AT: “the place where you were slaves for a long time” (See: [Metaphor](#))

what Balak ... devised

”the plans Balak ... made to harm you

how Balaam ... answered him

Possible meanings are 1) Balaam obeyed Balak by coming when Balak called him, AT: “how Balaam ... did what Balak asked him to do” or 2) Balaam explained to Balak why Balaam had blessed the Israelites instead of cursing them as Balak had commanded. AT: “what Balaam told Balak” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Beor

This is the name of Balaam’s father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shittim

This is the name of a place in Moab.

so you may know the righteous acts of Yahweh

Yahweh refers to himself by his own name. AT: “so that you may remember the righteous things that I, Yahweh, have done for you” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

translationWords

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [testimony, testify](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [house](#)
- [enslave, in bondage](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Miriam](#)
- [mind](#)
- [king](#)
- [Moab, Moabite, Moabites](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Gilgal](#)
- [righteous, righteousness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 6 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 6:6-8**UDB:**

⁶ The Israelite people ask, "What shall we bring to Yahweh who lives in heaven when we come to him and bow down before him?

Should we bring calves that are a year old
that will be offerings that will be killed and completely burned on the altar?

⁷ Would Yahweh be pleased if we offered to him a thousand rams
and ten thousand streams of olive oil?

Should we offer our firstborn children to be sacrifices
to pay for the sins that we have committed?"

⁸ No, because he has shown each of us what is good to do;
he has shown us what he requires each of us to do:
he wants us to do what is just and to love to act mercifully toward others,
and he wants us to live humbly while we fellowship with him, our God.

ULB:

⁶ What should I bring to Yahweh,
as I bow down to the high God?
Should I come to him with burnt offerings,
with calves a year old?

⁷ Will Yahweh be pleased with thousands of rams,
or with ten thousand rivers of oil?
Should I give my firstborn for my transgression,
the fruit of my body for my own sin?

⁸ He has told you, man,
what is good,
and what Yahweh requires from you:
Act justly,
love kindness,
and walk humbly with your God.

translationNotes

What should I bring to Yahweh ... God? Should I come ... old? Will Yahweh be pleased ... oil? Should I give ... sin?

Micah speaks as if he were a person who truly wanted to know what God expects him to do. Possible meanings are 1) he asks questions and then in verse 8 answers the questions he has asked or 2) he is using questions to teach the people. AT: “I know that I do not need to bring to Yahweh ... God, or come ... old, and that Yahweh will not be pleased ... oil or if I give ... sin.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

thousands of rams ... ten thousand rivers of oil

“rams in groups of 1,000 ... 10,000 rivers of oil” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Numbers](#))

He has told you

“Yahweh has told you”

good, and what Yahweh requires from you: Act ... God

Many versions read, “good. And what does Yahweh require from you? He wants you to act ... God.” or “good. And what does Yahweh require from you but to act ... God?”

love kindness

The abstract noun “kindness” can be translated using the adjective “kind.” AT: “love being kind to people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [bow, bow down](#)
- [God](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)
- [cow, calf, bull, cattle](#)
- [sheep, ram, ewe](#)
- [oil](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [good, goodness](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [humble, humbles, humbled, humility](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 6 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 6:9-10**UDB:**

⁹ God says this: "I am Yahweh, so if you are wise, you should honor me.

I am calling out to you people of Jerusalem to tell you this:

The armies that will destroy your city are coming,

so pay careful attention to me, the one who is causing them to punish you with my rod.

¹⁰ You wicked people have filled your homes with valuable things

that you acquired by cheating others.

You use false measures when you buy and sell things.

Those are things that I hate.

ULB:

⁹ The voice of Yahweh is making a proclamation to the city—

even now wisdom acknowledges your name:

"Pay attention to the rod,

and to the one who has put it in place. ^[1], some modern versions have .

¹⁰ There is wealth in the houses of the wicked that is dishonest,

and false measures that are abominable.

6:9 ^[1] Instead of the Hebrew text's reading of *Pay attention to the rod and to the one who has put it into place Listen, tribe, and those assembled together in the city*

translationNotes**The voice of Yahweh is making a proclamation to the city**

The voice represents the person and the city represents the people who live in it. AT: "Yahweh is making an announcement to the people of Jerusalem" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

even now wisdom acknowledges your name

Wisdom is spoken of as a person and is a metonym for the wise person. The word "name" here is a metonym for the person himself, what people think of him, and his authority. AT: "and the wise person will fear you" or "and the wise person will acknowledge that you are good and will obey you" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))

Pay attention to the rod, and to the one who has put it in place

Here “rod” refers to the enemy army with which Yahweh, who “has put it in place,” will discipline his people. (See: [Metaphor](#))

There is wealth in the houses of the wicked that is dishonest

Dishonest wealth is a metonym for wealth that people have gained by acting dishonestly. The words “the wicked” refer to wicked people. Houses are a synecdoche for everything a person possesses. AT: “Wicked people have acted dishonestly to gain wealth” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Nominal Adjectives](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

false measures

incorrect weights that people use with scales to increase their wealth by deceiving those with whom they trade

translationWords

- [voice](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [wise, wisdom](#)
- [name, names, named](#)
- [rod](#)
- [house](#)
- [evil, wicked, wickedness](#)
- [abomination, abominable](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 6 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 6:11-12**UDB:**

¹¹ You do not think that I should say nothing about people who use scales that do not weigh correctly,

and who use weights that are not accurate, do you?

¹² The rich people among you always act violently to get money from poor people.

All of the people in Jerusalem are liars,

and they always deceive people.

ULB:

¹¹ Should I consider a person to be innocent if he uses fraudulent scales, with a bag of deceptive weights?

¹² The rich men are full of violence,

the inhabitants have spoken lies,

and their tongue in their mouth is deceitful.

translationNotes**Should I consider a person to be innocent ... weights?**

This can be translated as a statement. AT: "I certainly will not consider a person innocent ... weights." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

deceptive weights

weights with which sellers deceive buyers

The rich men are full of violence

Rich men are spoken of as if they were containers, and people treating each other violently is spoken of as if it were a liquid that could be put into a container. AT: "The rich men act violently toward everyone" or "The rich men act violently all the time" (See: [Metaphor](#))

their tongue in their mouth is deceitful

The tongue is a synecdoche for the person. AT: "Everything they say is a lie" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

translationWords

- [innocent](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive](#)
- [tongue](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 6 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 6:13-15**UDB:**

¹³ Therefore, I have already begun to get rid of you,
to ruin you because of the sins that you have committed.

¹⁴ Soon you will eat food, but you will not have enough to satisfy you;
your stomachs will still feel as though they are empty.
You will try to save up money,
but you will be able to save nothing,
because I will send your enemies to take it from you in wars.

¹⁵ You will plant crops,
but you will not harvest anything.
You will press olives,
but others, not you, will use the olive oil.
You will trample on the grapes and make wine from the juice,
but others, not you, will drink the wine.

ULB:

¹³ Therefore I will strike you with a terrible blow,
and I will make you desolate because of your sins.

¹⁴ You will eat but not be satisfied;
your emptiness will remain inside you.
You will store goods away but not save,
and what you do save I will give to the sword. ^[1]

¹⁵ You will sow but not reap;
you will tread the olives but not anoint yourselves with oil;
you will press grapes but drink no wine.

6:14 ^[1]Parts of this verse are difficult to understand, because there are two Hebrew words in it whose meanings are not known. As a result, various other readings have been proposed that some modern versions follow.

translationNotes**I will strike you with a terrible blow**

Yahweh striking his people with blows is a metaphor for him punishing them. AT: “I have punished you severely” (See: [Metaphor](#))

your emptiness will remain inside you

A person or thing being hungry is spoken of as if it were something that could be put in a container, and the people are spoken of as if they were containers. AT: “You will be hungry, and you will not be able to eat enough to satisfy yourself” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [ruin, ruins](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sword](#)
- [sow, sower, plant](#)
- [reap, reaper](#)
- [olive](#)
- [anoint, anointed, anointing](#)
- [oil](#)
- [grape](#)
- [wine, wineskin, new wine](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 6 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 6:16**UDB:**

¹⁶ Those things will happen to you because you obey only the wicked laws of King Omri,
and you do the terrible things that King Ahab and his descendants commanded.
So I will destroy your country,
and I will cause the other people groups to despise you, my own people.”

ULB:

¹⁶ The regulations made by Omri have been kept,
and all the deeds of the house of Ahab.
You walk by their advice.
So I will make you, city, a ruin,
and you inhabitants an object of hissing,
and you will bear the reproach of my people.” ^[1], but an ancient Greek version has . Some
modern versions follow this reading.

6:16 ^[1]The Hebrew text has *you will bear the reproach of my people you will bear the scorn of the nations*

translationNotes**General Information:**

Yahweh continues speaking to the people of Israel.

The regulations made by Omri have been kept, and all the deeds of the house of Ahab

This can be translated in active form, and you may need to supply the words that the ellipsis omitted. AT: “You have done what Omri commanded, and you have done the same things the house of Ahab did” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Omri ... Ahab

Both of these men were kings over the northern kingdom of Israel. God considered both of them to be very wicked. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

house of Ahab

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. AT: “the descendants of Ahab”

You walk by their advice

Walking on a path is a metaphor for how a person lives his life. AT: “You do what Omri and Ahab told the people to do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will make you, city, a ruin, and you inhabitants an object of hissing

Micah speaks to the people of the city, who can hear him, as if he were speaking to the city itself, which cannot hear him. You may need to make explicit the words that the ellipsis omits. AT: “I will make your city a ruin, and I will make you inhabitants an object of hissing” or “I will make you, city, a ruin, and I will cause everyone who sees you, inhabitants of the city, to hiss at you” or “I will make the city a ruin, and I will make people hiss at the inhabitants” (See: [Apostrophe](#))

you will bear the reproach of my people

“you will suffer because my people will reproach you”

translationWords

- [works, deeds, work, acts](#)
- [house](#)
- [Ahab](#)
- [walk, walks, walked, walking](#)
- [mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 6 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 07 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Last days

This chapter looks forward to the hope of the coming savior for the faithful remnant. This is the future restoration of Israel when true peace will come. (See: [Savior, savior, faithful, faithfulness, remnant](#) and [restore, restores, restored, restoration](#))

== Prophet== The prophet was able to speak to God on behalf of the people. Often in this chapter, the prophet speaks in Israel's place and offers repentance to Yahweh. (See: [prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#) and [repent, repents, repented, repentance](#))

Links:

- [Micah 07:01 Notes](#)

Micah 7:1-2**UDB:**

¹ I am very miserable!

I am like someone who is hungry, who searches for fruit to eat
and who finds no grapes or figs to eat
because all the fruit has been picked.

² Everyone who honored God has disappeared from this land;
not one of them is left.

The people who are left are all murderers;
it is as though everyone is eager to kill his fellow countryman.

ULB:

¹ Woe is me!

I have become like the gathering of summer fruit,
and like the grapes that have been gleaned;
there is no grape cluster to eat,
no ripe early fig that my soul desires.

² Faithful people have disappeared from the land;
there is no upright person in all mankind.
They all lie in wait to shed blood;
each one hunts his own brother with a net.

translationNotes**I have become like the gathering of summer fruit, and like the grapes that have been gleaned**

Micah speaks of looking for but being unable to find faithful people as if he were looking for food after the harvesters had taken it all. You may need to supply the words omitted by the ellipsis. AT: "I have become like someone looking for food after the gathering of summer fruit, like a gleaner after the grapes have been gleaned" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

no grape cluster ... no ripe early fig

Micah speaks of faithful, upright people as if they were fruit that is good to eat. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Faithful people have disappeared ... land; there is no upright person ... They all lie in wait ... blood; each one hunts

These are exaggerations. AT: “I feel as though faithful people have disappeared ... land and there is no upright person ... I feel as though they all lie in wait ... blood, and each one hunts” (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#))

to shed blood

Blood is a metaphor for the death of innocent people. AT: “to kill innocent people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [woe](#)
- [glean, gleaning](#)
- [grape](#)
- [vineyard](#)
- [perish, perished, perishing, perishable](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:3-4**UDB:**

³ They do what is evil with all their might.

Government officials and judges all ask for bribes.

Important people tell others what they want,

and they plot together about how to get it.

⁴ Even the best people are as worthless as briars;

the people who we thought to be the most honest are worse than thornbushes.

But Yahweh will soon judge them.

Now is the time that he will punish people,

when they will be very confused because of it.

ULB:

³ Their hands are very good at doing harm:

the ruler asks for money,

the judge is ready for bribes,

and the powerful man is saying to others what he wants to obtain.

Thus they plot together.

⁴ The best of them is like a briar,

the most upright is worse than a thorn hedge.

It is the day foretold by your watchmen,

the day of your punishment.

Now is the time of their confusion.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah continues speaking about the people of Israel.

Their hands are very good

The hand is a synecdoche for the person. AT: "The people are very good" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

The best of them is like a brier, the most upright is worse than a thorn hedge

Briers and thorns are good for nothing and harm those who touch them. The Israelite rulers and judges did nothing good and harmed people. (See: [Simile](#))

the most upright

“those of them who try hardest to do what is good”

It is the day foretold by your watchmen, the day of your punishment

Micah speaks to the people of Israel, so both instances of “your” are plural. The word “watchmen” is a metaphor for prophets. AT: “Their prophets have told them that Yahweh would punish them” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Forms of You](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Now is the time of their confusion

The abstract noun “confusion” can be translated as a verb. AT: “Now is when they do not understand what is happening” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [ruler, rule](#)
- [judge](#)
- [bribe](#)
- [punish, punishment](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:5-6**UDB:**

⁵ So do not trust anyone!

Do not trust even a friend;
even be careful what you say to your wife, whom you love.

⁶ Boys will despise their fathers,
and girls will defy their mothers.

Women will defy their mothers-in-law.

Your enemies will be those who live in your own house.

ULB:

⁵ Do not trust any neighbor;
put no confidence in any friend.
Be careful about what you say
even to the woman who lies in your arms.

⁶ For a son dishonors his father,
a daughter rises up against her mother,
and a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law.
A man's enemies are the people of his own house.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah continues speaking to the people of Israel.

Do not trust any neighbor ... people of his own house

Micah continues to show that there is no longer anyone good, honest, and loyal to God among God's people. Here he emphasizes that they cannot even trust friends or family.

a daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law

You may need to supply the words omitted by the ellipsis. AT: "a daughter-in-law rises up against her mother-in-law" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

his own house

The word “house” is a metonym for the family that lives in the house. AT: “his own family” (See: [Metonymy](#))

translationWords

- [trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness](#)
- [neighbor](#)
- [dishonor, dishonorable](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:7-8**UDB:**

⁷ As for me, I wait for Yahweh to help me.

I confidently expect that God, my Savior, will answer me when I pray.

⁸ You who are our enemies,

do not gloat about what has happened to us,

because even if we have experienced disasters,

those disasters will end, and we will be prosperous again.

Even if it is as though we are sitting in the darkness,

Yahweh will be our light.

ULB:

⁷ But as for me, I will look to Yahweh.

I will wait for the God of my salvation;

my God will hear me.

⁸ Do not rejoice over me, my enemy.

After I fall,

I will rise.

When I sit in darkness,

Yahweh will be a light for me.

translationNotes**General Information:**

In verse 8 Micah begins speaking as if he were one woman speaking to her enemy, another woman. This is perhaps the daughter of Zion ([Micah 1:13](#)), who represents the people of Israel, speaking to the “daughter of soldiers” ([Micah 5:1](#)), who represents the nations which attacked Israel. All commands and instances of “you” are feminine singular. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Forms of You](#))

But as for me

Here “me” refers to Micah.

I will wait for the God of my salvation

The abstract noun “salvation” can be translated as a verb. AT: “I will wait for the God who saves me” or “I will wait for God, who saves me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

will hear me

The word “hear” represents hearing and acting. AT: “will act to help me” (See: [Metonymy](#))

fall ... rise

These words are metaphors for suffering from disaster and then recovering. (See: [Metaphor](#))

sit in darkness

These words are a metaphor for suffering from disaster. (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)
- [salvation](#)
- [rejoice](#)
- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [darkness](#)
- [light](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:9**UDB:**

⁹ We must be patient while Yahweh punishes us
because we have sinned against him.

But later, it will be as though he will go to court and defend us.

He will make sure that the judge makes a right decision about us.

It will be as though he will bring us out into the light,
and we will see him rescue us.

ULB:

⁹ Because I sinned against Yahweh,
I will bear his rage
until he pleads my cause,
and executes judgment for me.
He will bring me to the light,
and I will see him rescue me in his justice.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah continues the poem that began in [Micah 7:8](#), speaking as if he were one woman speaking to her enemy, another woman. This is perhaps the daughter of Zion ([Micah 1:13](#)), who represents the people of Israel, speaking to the “daughter of soldiers” ([Micah 5:1](#)), who represents the nations which attacked Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will bear his rage

Rage is spoken of as if it were a solid object that Yahweh was forcing Micah to carry. AT: “I will suffer because he is angry with me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

until he pleads my cause, and executes judgment for me

Yahweh will punish the people of the other nations who harmed the people of Israel.

he pleads my cause

Yahweh is spoken of as if he were defending Micah in court. AT: “he defends me against those who harm me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

executes judgment for me

“brings about justice for me”

He will bring me to the light

Bringing Micah from darkness ([Micah 7:8](#)) to light is a metaphor for ending the suffering from disaster and enabling him to live well. (See: [Metaphor](#))

rescue me in his justice

“bring justice to me and rescue me”

translationWords

- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [judge, judges, judgment, judgments](#)
- [light](#)
- [just, justice, justly](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:10**UDB:**

¹⁰ Our enemies will also see it, and they will be disgraced
 because they ridiculed us, saying
 “Why is Yahweh, that God of yours, not helping you?”
 But with our own eyes we will see them be defeated;
 we will see them trampled
 like mud in the streets.

ULB:

¹⁰ Then my enemy will see it,
 and shame will cover the one who said to me,
 “Where is Yahweh your God?”
 My eyes will look at her;
 she will be trampled down like the mud in the streets.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah continues and ends the poem that began in [Micah 7:8](#), speaking as if he were one woman speaking to her enemy, another woman. This is perhaps the daughter of Zion ([Micah 1:13](#)), who represents the people of Israel, speaking to the “daughter of soldiers” ([Micah 5:1](#)), who represents the nations which attacked Israel. (See: [Metaphor](#))

my enemy ... the one who said ... your God ... My eyes

The words “enemy,” “one,” “your,” and “my” here refer to the women in the poem and so are feminine singular.

Where is Yahweh your God?

The enemy uses a question to mock the people of Israel. It can be translated as a statement. AT: “Yahweh your God cannot help you” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

My eyes

This phrase here refers to the whole person. AT: “I” or “We” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

she will be trampled down

This can be stated in active form. AT: “her enemies will trample her down” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

like the mud in the streets

People who walk on mud without thinking they are doing anything bad are compared with those who will destroy Israel’s enemies without thinking they are doing anything evil. (See: [Simile](#))

translationWords

- [adversary, enemy](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:11-13**UDB:**

¹¹ You people of Israel, at that time your cities will be rebuilt,
and your territory will become larger.

¹² Your people will come back to you from many countries,
from Assyria, from near the Euphrates River in the east, and from Egypt in the south,
from the Dead Sea to the Mediterranean Sea,
and from many mountains.

¹³ But the other countries on the earth will become desolate
because of the evil deeds that their people have done.

ULB:

¹¹ A day to build your walls will come;
on that day the boundaries will be extended very far.

¹² On that day your people will come to you,
from Assyria and the cities in Egypt,
from Egypt to the River,
from sea to sea,
and from mountain to mountain.

¹³ But the land will be desolate
because of the people who are living there,
because of the fruit of their actions.

translationNotes**General Information:**

Micah speaks to the people of Israel as if he were speaking to one man. (See: [Forms of You](#))

A day to build your walls will come

Here “walls” refers to the walls around their cities, which provided safety and security from their enemies.

the boundaries will be extended very far

This can be translated in active form. AT: “Yahweh will greatly extend the boundaries of your land” or “Yahweh will greatly increase the size of your kingdom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the River

You may need to make explicit the name of river. AT: “the Euphrates River” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

from sea to sea

You may need to make explicit the names of the seas. “from the Mediterranean Sea in the west to the Dead Sea in the east” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

from mountain to mountain

“from one mountain to another.” Micah does not speak of any particular mountain. (See: [Idiom](#))

the land will be desolate

“the land will be empty” or “no one will live in the land”

because of the fruit of their actions

Fruit is a metaphor for the results of an earlier action. AT: “because of the results of what they have done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [people of God, my people](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Euphrates River](#)
- [fruit, fruitful](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:14-15**UDB:**

¹⁴ Yahweh, protect your people as a shepherd protects his sheep with his staff.

Lead the people whom you have chosen to belong to you.

Even though some of them live by themselves in a forest,

give them the fertile pastureland

in the regions of Bashan and Gilead,

which they possessed long ago.

¹⁵ Yahweh says,

”Yes, I will perform miracles for you

like the miracles that I performed when I rescued your ancestors from being slaves in Egypt.”

ULB:

¹⁴ Shepherd your people with your rod,

the flock of your inheritance.

They live alone in a thicket,

in the midst of a pastureland.

Let them graze in Bashan and Gilead

as in the old days.

¹⁵ As in the days when you came out of the land of Egypt,

I will show them wonders.

translationNotes**Shepherd your people with your rod, the flock of your inheritance**

Micah is praying to Yahweh, asking him to protect his people of Israel again. Here “rod” refers to God’s leadership and guidance, as a shepherd uses a stick to guide and protect his sheep. (See: [Metaphor](#))

They live alone in a thicket, in the midst of a pastureland

Micah speaks of his people as if they were wild animals hiding in bushes instead of livestock grazing in fields with much grass to eat. (See: [Metaphor](#))

a thicket

a place where many small woody plants grow

Bashan and Gilead

These regions are known as rich land for growing food.

as in the old days

Bashan and Gilead had been part of Israel long ago, when David was king. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

As in the days ... them wonders

Yahweh speaks to the people.

translationWords

- [shepherd, to shepherd](#)
- [people of God, my people](#)
- [rod](#)
- [flock, herd](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [Bashan](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:16-17**UDB:**

¹⁶ People from many nations will see what Yahweh does for you,
and they will be ashamed
because they do not have any power.

They will put their hands over their mouths and their ears because they will be very amazed at what Yahweh does.

They will not be able to say anything or hear anything, because they will be terrified.

¹⁷ Being very humiliated, they will crawl on the ground like snakes.

They will come out of their homes trembling
and stand to honor Yahweh our God.

They will be very afraid of him
and will tremble in front of him.

ULB:

¹⁶ The nations will see and be ashamed
of all their power.

They will put their hands on their mouths;
their ears will be deaf.

¹⁷ They will lick the dust like a snake,
like creatures that crawl on the earth.

They will come out of their dens with fear;
they will come with fear to you, Yahweh our God,
and they will be afraid because of you.

translationNotes**The nations**

The word “nations” is a metonym for the people who live in many nations. AT: “The people of the nations nearby” (See: [Metaphor](#))

They will put their hands on their mouths

They do this to show that they are ashamed of what they have done. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

their ears will be deaf

This is an idiom. Nothing anyone says will have any effect on them. (See: [Idiom](#))

They will lick the dust like a snake

Snakes slither on the ground where dust gets on them, and here the people are being compared to snakes, though it is probably an exaggeration that they will lick the dust. Possible meanings are that these people 1) will literally lie on the ground in shame or 2) will be so ashamed and humbled that it will be as if they were lying on the ground. (See: [Hyperbole and Generalization](#) and [Simile](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

their dens

The people are spoken of as if they were animals, because animals live in “dens”. AT: “their homes” or “their hiding places” (See: [Metaphor](#))

translationWords

- [nation](#)
- [shame, shameful, ashamed](#)
- [power, powers](#)
- [hand, right hand, to hand over](#)
- [serpent, snake, viper](#)
- [fear, fears, afraid](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [God](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:18**UDB:**

¹⁸ Yahweh, there is no God like you;
 you forgive the sins that the people who have survived committed,
 the people who belong to you.
 You do not remain angry forever;
 you are very happy to show us that you faithfully love us.

ULB:

¹⁸ Who is a God like you—
 who takes away sin,
 who passes over the transgression of the remnant of his inheritance?
 He does not keep his anger forever,
 because he delights in his covenant faithfulness.

translationNotes**Who is a God like you—who takes ... inheritance?**

Micah is emphasizing that there is no God like Yahweh. This can be translated as a statement. AT: “I know that there is no God like you, who takes ... inheritance.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the remnant of his inheritance

“those of his chosen people who have survived his punishment”

you ... of the remnant of his inheritance? He does not keep his anger forever, because he delights in his covenant faithfulness.

Here the words “his” and “he” can be stated in second person. AT: “you ... of the remnant of your inheritance, who do not keep your anger forever, because you delight in your covenant faithfulness?” or “you ... of the remnant of your inheritance? You do not keep your anger forever, because you delights in your covenant faithfulness.” (See: [First, Second, or Third Person](#))

he delights in his covenant faithfulness

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful.” AT: “he delights in being faithful to his covenant” or “he delights in being faithful to his people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

passes over

ignores

does not keep his anger

“does not stay angry”

translationWords

- [God](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [transgress, transgresses, transgression](#)
- [remnant](#)
- [inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir](#)
- [forever](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

Micah 7:19-20**UDB:**

¹⁹ You will again act kindly toward us.

You will get rid of the scroll on which you have written the sins that we have committed,
as though you were trampling it under your feet
or throwing it into the deep ocean.

²⁰ You will show that you faithfully do what you promised for us and faithfully love us,
just as you solemnly promised long ago to our ancestors Abraham and Jacob that you would
do.

ULB:

¹⁹ You will again have compassion on us;
you will trample our iniquities under your feet.
You will throw all our sins into the depths of the sea.

²⁰ You will give truth to Jacob
and covenant faithfulness to Abraham,
as you swore to our ancestors in ancient days.

translationNotes**You will**

Here “you” refers to Yahweh. (See: [Forms of You](#))

on us

Here “us” refers to Micah and the people, but not to Yahweh. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#))

you will trample our iniquities under your feet. You will throw all our sins into the depths of the sea

Iniquity and sin are spoken of as if they were solid objects. AT: “You will treat our iniquities and sins as if they were not important” (See: [Metaphor](#))

You will give truth to Jacob and covenant faithfulness to Abraham

Here the names of Jacob and Abraham are metonyms for their descendants, the people of Israel to whom Micah was speaking. The abstract nouns “truth” and “faithfulness” can be stated as “trustworthy” and “faithful.” AT: “You will show the descendants of Jacob and Abraham that you are trustworthy and faithful to your covenant” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

translationWords

- [compassion, compassionate](#)
- [iniquity, iniquities](#)
- [sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [true, truth, truths](#)
- [Jacob, Israel](#)
- [covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)

Links:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7 translationQuestions](#)

translationQuestions

Micah 1

Who were the kings of Judah when the word of Yahweh came to Micah?

Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah were kings of Judah when the word of Yahweh came to Micah. [1:1]

On what will Yahweh come down and tread?

Yahweh will come down and tread on the pagan shrines on the earth. [1:3]

Why will Yahweh bring this judgment?

Yahweh will bring this judgment because of the rebellion of Jacob, and because of the sins of the house of Israel. [1:5]

How did Samaria gather carved figures, gifts, and idols?

Samaria gathered carved figures, gifts, and idols from the gifts to her prostitution. [1:7]

How did Micah express his grief over the sin of Israel and Jacob?

Micah lamented and wailed, and went barefoot and naked. [1:8]

Why did Beth Ezel mourn?

Beth Ezel mourned, for their protection was taken away. [1:11]

What city was the beginning of sin for the daughter of Zion?

Lachish was the beginning of sin for the daughter of Zion. [1:13]

Why should the Israelites shave their heads?

They should shave their heads, for their children would go into exile from them. [1:16]

Micah 2**Where are people planning to do evil?**

They are planning on their beds to do evil. [2:1]

Why will the rich people have no descendants to divide up the territory?

Yahweh will change the territory of the people, and remove it from them. So the rich people will have no descendants to divide up the territory. [2:4]

Why will the rich people have no descendants to divide up the territory?

Yahweh will change the territory of the people, and remove it from them. So the rich people will have no descendants to divide up the territory. [2:5]

From whom do Yahweh's people strip the robe?

They strip the robe from those who pass by unsuspectingly. [2:8]

Why should Yahweh's people get up and leave?

They should get up and leave for this was not a place where they could stay, because of its uncleanness. [2:10]

Who will gather the remnant of Israel?

Yahweh will gather the remnant of Israel. [2:12]

Micah 3

Who eats the flesh of Yahweh's people?

The leaders of Jacob eat the flesh of Yahweh's people. [3:3]

Why will Yahweh hide his face from the leaders of Jacob?

Yahweh will hide his face from the leaders of Jacob because they have done evil deeds. [3:4]

Why will the prophets do no divination?

It will be dark so that the prophets will do no divination. [3:6]

For what do the leaders judge?

The leaders judge for a bribe. [3:11]

Micah 4

When will the mountain of Yahweh's house be established over the other mountains?

In the last days the mountain of Yahweh's house will be established over the other mountains. [4:1]

Why will many nations want to go to the mountain of Yahweh?

Many nations will want to go to the mountain of Yahweh, so he will teach them his ways, and they will walk in his paths. [4:2]

In what do all the peoples walk?

All the peoples walk in the name of their god. [4:5]

Whom will Yahweh assemble?

Yahweh will assemble the lame and gather the outcast, those whom he had afflicted. [4:6]

Where will the daughter of Zion be rescued?

The daughter of Zion will be rescued in Babylon. [4:10]

According to the prophet, who does not know Yahweh's thoughts?

The nations do not know Yahweh's thoughts [4:12]

To whom will Yahweh devote many peoples' unjust wealth?

Yahweh will devote their unjust wealth to himself. [4:13]

Micah 5

With what will the enemy strike the leader of Israel?

They will strike the leader of Israel with a rod on the cheek. [5:1]

For how long will God give up the clans of Judah?

God will give them up, until the time when she who was in labor bears a child. [5:3]

Who will shepherd his flock in the strength of Yahweh?

The child will shepherd his flock in the strength of Yahweh. [5:4]

For what do the remnant of Jacob not wait?

The remnant of Jacob do not wait for man. [5:7]

What will happen when the Israelites' hand will be lifted against their enemies?

When the Israelites' hand is lifted against their enemies, it will destroy them. [5:9]

On whom will Yahweh execute vengeance?

Yahweh will execute vengeance on the nations that have not listened. [5:15]

Micah 6

What will Yahweh do against Israel?

Yahweh will fight in court against Israel. [6:2]

What did Yahweh command his people to do against him?

He commanded them to testify against him. [6:3]

What did Yahweh require from his people?

Yahweh required his people to act justly, love kindness, and walk humbly with their God. [6:8]

Whose tongue is deceitful?

The tongue of the inhabitants who have spoken lies is deceitful. [6:12]

Why did Yahweh make the city a ruin?

Yahweh made the city a ruin because of his sins. [6:13]

By whose advice did the city walk?

The city walked by the advice of Omri and Ahab. [6:16]

Micah 7

Who perished from the earth?

The godly man perished from the earth. [7:2]

Who foretold the day of the punishment of the remaining people?

The watchmen foretold the day of the punishment of the remaining people. [7:4]

Who are a man's enemies?

A man's enemies are the people of his own house. [7:6]

What would happen after Micah falls?

After Micah falls, he will rise. [7:8]

For how long will Micah bear Yahweh's rage?

Micah will bear Yahweh's rage until Yahweh pleaded his cause, and executed judgment for Micah. [7:9]

At whom will Micah's eyes look?

Micah's eyes will look at his enemy. [7:10]

What will happen when a day comes to build the walls?

When a day comes to build the walls, the boundaries will be extended very far. [7:11]

What will happen when a day comes to build the walls?

When a day comes to build the walls, the boundaries will be extended very far. [7:12]

How did Micah ask Yahweh to shepherd his people?

Micah asked Yahweh to shepherd his people with his rod. [7:14]

What will Yahweh show his people?

Yahweh will show them wonders. [7:15]

What will the nations see and be ashamed of?

They will see and be ashamed of all their power. [7:16]

Who will the nations come to and be afraid of?

The nations will come to Yahweh and they will be afraid because of him. [7:17]

Why will Yahweh not keep his anger forever?

Yahweh will not keep his anger forever, because he loves to show his covenant faithfulness. [7:18]

Into what will Yahweh throw all the sins of the people of Israel?

Yahweh will throw all their sins into the depths of the sea. [7:19]

translationWords

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the **priest** priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:12-14
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- Exodus 28:1-3
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- Numbers 16:44-46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, [idol](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:33-34
- Isaiah 01:12-13
- [Matthew 24:15-18](#)
- Proverbs 26:24-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

Uses:

- [Micah 6:9-10](#)

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to “Abraham.”

- The name “Abram” means “exalted father.”
- “Abraham” means “father of many.”
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Chaldea, Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:1-4
- Genesis 22:1-3
- [James 02:21-24](#)
- [Matthew 01:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance.”
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram**’s name to **Abraham**, which means “father of many.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham**’s faith by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

Uses:

- Micah 7:19-20

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person or group who is opposed to someone or something. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose you or harm you.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- Adversary may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:14-16](#)
- [Isaiah 09:11-12](#)
- [Job 06:21-23](#)
- [Lamentations 04:12-13](#)
- [Luke 12:57-59](#)
- [Matthew 13:24-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G4567, G5227

Uses:

- [Micah 2:3-5](#)
- [Micah 2:6-8](#)
- [Micah 4:9-10](#)
- [Micah 5:8-9](#)
- [Micah 7:5-6](#)
- [Micah 7:7-8](#)
- [Micah 7:10](#)

afflict, affliction

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships in order to cause them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to be suffering some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To afflict someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- In certain contexts “afflict” could be translated as “happen to” or “come to” or “bring suffering.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- Amos 05:12-13
- [Colossians 01:24-27](#)
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:31-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H1790, H3013, H3905, H3906, H4157, H4523, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, H7667, G2346, G2347, G2552, G2553, G2561, G3804,

G4777, G4778, G5003

Uses:

- [Micah 4:6-8](#)

Ahab

Facts:

Ahab was a very evil king who reigned over the northern kingdom of Israel from 875 to 854 BC.

- King Ahab influenced the people of Israel to worship false gods.
- The prophet Elijah confronted Ahab and told him there would be a severe drought for three and a half years as punishment for the sins that Ahab caused Israel to commit.
- Ahab and his wife Jezebel did many other evil things, including using their power to kill innocent people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Baal, Elijah, Jezebel, kingdom of Israel, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:1-2
- 1 Kings 20:1-3
- 2 Chronicles 21:6-7
- 2 Kings 09:7-8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:02** Elijah was a prophet when **Ahab** was king over the kingdom of Israel. **Ahab** was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named Baal.
- **19:03** **Ahab** and his army looked for Elijah, but they could not find him.
- **19:05** After three and a half years, God told Elijah to return to the kingdom of Israel and speak with **Ahab** because he was going to send rain again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H256

Uses:

- [Micah 6:16](#)

Ahaz

Definition:

Ahaz was a wicked king who ruled over the kingdom of Judah from 732 BC to 716 BC. This was about 140 years before the time when many people in Israel and Judah were taken as captives to Babylonia.

- While he was ruling Judah, Ahaz had an altar built for worshipping the false gods of the Assyrians, which caused the people to turn away from the one true God, Yahweh.
- King Ahaz was 20 years old when he started to rule over Judah, and he ruled for 16 years.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 08:35-37
- 2 Chronicles 28:1-2
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- Hosea 01:1-2
- Isaiah 01:1
- Isaiah 07:3-4
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H271

Uses:

- [Micah 1:1](#)

angry, anger

Definition:

To “be angry” or to “have anger” means to be very displeased, irritated and upset about something or against someone.

- When people get angry, they are often sinful and selfish, but sometimes they have righteous anger against injustice or oppression.
- God’s anger (also called “wrath”) expresses his strong displeasure regarding sin.
- The phrase “provoke to anger” means “cause to be angry.”

(See also: [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- Exodus 32:9-11
- Isaiah 57:16-17
- [John 06:52-53](#)
- [Mark 10:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 26:6-9](#)
- Psalms 018:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H599, H639, H1149, H2152, H2194, H2195, H2198, H2534, H2734, H2787, H3179, H3707, H3708, H3824, H4751, H4843, H5674, H5678, H6225, H7107, H7110, H7266, H7307, G23, G1758, G2371, G2372, G3164, G3709, G3710, G3711, G3947, G3949, G5520

Uses:

- [Micah 2:6-8](#)
- [Micah 5:12-15](#)

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. The term is also used figuratively to refer to the Holy Spirit choosing and empowering someone.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: [Christ](#), consecrate, high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:20-21](#)
- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [1 Samuel 16:2-3](#)
- [Acts 04:27-28](#)
- [Amos 06:5-6](#)
- [Exodus 29:5-7](#)
- [James 05:13-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H430, H4397, H4398, H8136, G32, G743, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, G218, G1472, G2025, G3462, G5545, G5548

Uses:

- [Micah 6:13-15](#)

arrogant

Definition:

The term “arrogant” means proud, usually in an obvious, outward way.

- An arrogant person will often boast about himself.
- Being arrogant usually includes thinking that other people are not as important or talented as oneself.
- People who do not honor God and who are in rebellion against him are arrogant because they do not acknowledge how great God is.

(See also: acknowledge, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Peter 02:17-19](#)
- Ezekiel 16:49-50
- Proverbs 16:5-6
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1346, H1347, H6277

Uses:

- [Micah 2:3-5](#)

Asherah, Asherah poles, Ashtoreth

Definition:

Asherah was the name of a goddess that was worshiped by Canaanite people groups during Old Testament times. “Ashtoreth” may be another name for “Asherah,” or it could be the name of a different goddess that was very similar.

- The term “Asherah poles” refers to carved wooden images or carved trees that were made to represent this goddess.
- Asherah poles were often set up near altars of the false god Baal, who was thought of as Asherah’s husband. Some people groups worshiped Baal as the sun god and Asherah or Ashtoreth as the moon goddess.
- God commanded the Israelites to destroy all the carved images of Asherah.
- Some Israelite leaders such as Gideon, King Asa, and King Josiah obeyed God and led the people in destroying these idols.
- But other Israelite leaders such as King Solomon, King Manasseh, and King Ahab did not get rid of the Asherah poles and influenced the people to worship these idols.

(See also: [idol](#), Baal, Gideon, [image](#), Solomon)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- 2 Kings 21:1-3
- Isaiah 27:9
- Judges 03:7-8
- [Micah 05:12-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H842, H6252, H6253

Uses:

- [Micah 5:12-15](#)

assembly, assemble

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together to discuss problems, give advice, and make decisions.

- An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.
- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”
- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14-16
- [Acts 07:38-40](#)
- Ezra 10:12-13
- [Hebrews 12:22-24](#)
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H622, H627, H1413, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H5789, H6116, H6633, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, H7284, G1577, G1997, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

Uses:

- *Micah 2:3-5*

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11-14
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17-18
- [Micah 07:11-13](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country. ***20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**. ***20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

Uses:

- [Micah 5:4-5](#)
- [Micah 5:6-7](#)
- [Micah 7:11-13](#)

avenge, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “to avenge” could also be translated as “to right a wrong” or “to get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: [punish](#), [just](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15-17
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 018:46-47
- [Romans 12:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H6544, H6546, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G1558, G2917, G3709

Uses:

- [Micah 5:12-15](#)

Babylon, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- In the New Testament, the term “Babylon” is sometimes used as a metaphor to refer to places, people, and thinking patterns that are associated with idol-worship and other sinful behaviors.
- The phrase “Babylon the Great” or “great city of Babylon” refers metaphorically to a city or nation that was large, wealthy, and sinful, just as the ancient city of Babylon was. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: Babel, Chaldea, [Judah](#), Nebuchadnezzar)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- Daniel 01:1-2
- Ezekiel 12:11-13
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)
- [Matthew 01:15-17](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

Uses:

- **Micah 4:9-10**

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balek hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balek, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [bless](#), Canaan, curse, donkey, [Euphrates River](#), Jordan River, Midian, [Moab](#), Peor)

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 02:15-16](#)
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5-6
- [Revelation 02:14-15](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G903

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:11-14
- Amos 04:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 09:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1316

Uses:

- [Micah 7:14-15](#)

Bethlehem, Ephrathah

Facts:

Bethlehem was a small city in the land of Israel, near the city of Jerusalem. It was also known as “Ephrathah,” which was probably its original name.

- Bethlehem has been called the “city of David,” since King David was born there.
- The prophet Micah said that the Messiah would come from “Bethlehem Ephrathah.”
- Fulfilling that prophecy, Jesus was born in Bethlehem, many years later.
- The name “Bethlehem” means “house of bread” or “house of food.”

(See also: Caleb, David, [Micah](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:16-20
- [John 07:40-42](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 02:16](#)
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of **Bethlehem**. ***21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a virgin. The prophet Micah said that he would be born in the town of **Bethlehem**. ***23:04** Joseph and Mary had to make a long journey from where they lived in Nazareth to **Bethlehem** because their ancestor was David whose hometown was **Bethlehem**. ***23:06** “The Messiah, the Master, has been born in **Bethlehem!**”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H376, H672, H1035, G965

Uses:

- [Micah 5:2-3](#)

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as “to provide abundantly for” or “to be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 10:14-17](#)
- [Acts 13:32-34](#)
- [Ephesians 01:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [Isaiah 44:3-4](#)
- [James 01:22-25](#)
- [Luke 06:20-21](#)
- [Matthew 26:26](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:5-6](#)
- [Romans 04:9-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

Uses:

- **Micah 2:9-11**

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood symbolizes life and when it is shed or poured out, it symbolizes the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- Through his death on the cross, Jesus’ blood symbolically cleanses people from their sins and pays for the punishment they deserve for those sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: flesh)

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:31-32](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- [Acts 05:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Galatians 01:15-17](#)
- [Genesis 04:10-12](#)
- [Psalms 016:4](#)
- [Psalms 105:28-30](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.

- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb's **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131, G1420

Uses:

- **Micah 3:9-11**

bow, bow down

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:17-19
- Exodus 20:4-6
- Genesis 24:26-27
- Genesis 44:14-15
- Isaiah 44:19
- [Luke 24:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 02:11-12](#)
- [Revelation 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5186, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4781, G4794

Uses:

- [Micah 6:6-8](#)

bribe

Definition:

To “bribe” means to give someone something of value, such as money, to influence that person to do something dishonest.

- The soldiers who guarded Jesus’ empty tomb were bribed with money to lie about what happened.
- Sometimes a government official will be bribed to overlook a crime or to vote a certain way.
- The Bible forbids giving or taking bribes.
- The term, “bribe” could be translated as, “dishonest payment” or “payment for lying” or “price for breaking the rules.”
- “To bribe” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “to pay to influence (someone)” or “to pay to have a dishonest favor done” or “to pay for a favor.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:1-3
- Ecclesiastes 07:7
- Isaiah 01:23
- **Micah 03:9-11**
- Proverbs 15:27-28

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3724, H4979, H7809, H7810, H7936, H7966, H8641, G5260

Uses:

- **Micah 3:9-11**
- **Micah 7:3-4**

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:15-17
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

Uses:

- [Micah 4:13](#)

brother, brothers

Definition:

The term “brother” usually refers to a male person who shares at least one biological parent with another person.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives, such as members of the same tribe, clan, or people group.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often used “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women, since all believers in Christ are members of one spiritual family, with God as their heavenly Father.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Genesis 29:9-10](#)
- [Leviticus 19:17-18](#)
- [Nehemiah 03:1-2](#)
- [Philippians 04:21-23](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

Uses:

- [Micah 5:2-3](#)

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, [priest](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20-22
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:3-5
- [Mark 12:32-34](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

Uses:

- [Micah 6:6-8](#)

cast out, drive out, throw out

Definition:

To “cast out” or “drive out” someone or something means to force that person or thing to go away.

- The term “cast” means the same thing as “throw.” To cast a net means to throw the net into the water.
- In a figurative sense, “cast out” or “cast away” someone can mean to reject that person and send him away.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include, “force out” or “send away” or “get rid of.”
- To “cast out demons” could be translated as “cause the demons to leave” or “drive the evil spirits out” or “expel the demons” or “command the demon to come out.”

(See also: demon, demon-possessed, [lots](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:17-19](#)
- [Mark 03:13-16](#)
- [Mark 09:28-29](#)
- [Matthew 07:21-23](#)
- [Matthew 09:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 12:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 17:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1272, H1644, H1920, H3423, H7971, H7993, G1544

Uses:

- [Micah 2:9-11](#)
- [Micah 4:6-8](#)

chariot

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- [Acts 08:29-31](#)
- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 41:42-43

Examples from the Bible stories:

***12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H668, H2021, H4817, H4818, H5699, H7393, H7395, H7396, H7398, G716, G4480

Uses:

- [Micah 1:13-14](#)
- [Micah 5:10-11](#)

children, child

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “child” is often used to generally refer to someone who is young in age, including an infant. The term “children” is the plural form and it also has several figurative uses.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called “children.”
- Often the term “children” is used to refer to a person’s descendants.
- The phrase “children of” can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to people who are like spiritual children. For example, “children of God” refers to people who belong to God through faith in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “children” could be translated as “descendants” when it is referring to a person’s great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, “children of” could be translated as, “people who have the characteristics of” or “people who behave like.”
- If possible, the phrase, “children of God” should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, “people who belong to God” or “God’s spiritual children.”
- When Jesus calls his disciples “children,” this could also be translated as, “dear friends” or “my beloved disciples.”
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as “children,” this could also be translated as “dear fellow believers.”
- The phrase, “children of the promise” could be translated as, “people who have received what God promised them.”

(See also: descendant, promise, son, [spirit](#), believer, beloved)

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:27-29](#)
- [3 John 01:1-4](#)
- [Galatians 04:19-20](#)
- Genesis 45:9-11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

Uses:

- [Micah 1:15-16](#)
- [Micah 5:2-3](#)

Christ, Messiah

Facts:

The terms “Messiah” and “Christ” mean “Anointed One” and refer to Jesus, God’s Son.

- Both “Messiah” and “Christ” are used in the New Testament to refer to God’s Son, whom God the Father appointed to rule as king over his people, and to save them from sin and death.
- In the Old Testament, the prophets wrote prophecies about the Messiah hundreds of years before he came to earth.
- Often a word meaning “anointed (one)” is used in the Old Testament to refer to the Messiah who would come.
- Jesus fulfilled many of these prophecies and did many miraculous works that proves he is the Messiah; the rest of these prophecies will be fulfilled when he returns.
- The word “Christ” is often used as a title, as in “the Christ” and “Christ Jesus.”
- “Christ” also came to be used as part of his name, as in “Jesus Christ.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated using its meaning, “the Anointed One” or “God’s Anointed Savior.”
- Many languages use a transliterated word that looks or sounds like “Christ” or “Messiah.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- The transliterated word could be followed by the definition of the term as in, “Christ, the Anointed One.”
- Be consistent in how this is translated throughout the Bible so that it is clear that the same term is being referred to.
- Make sure the translations of “Messiah” and “Christ” work well in contexts where both terms occur in the same verse (such as John 1:41).

(See also: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Son of God, David, Jesus, [anoint](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 05:40-42](#)
- [John 01:40-42](#)
- [John 03:27-28](#)
- [John 04:25-26](#)
- [Luke 02:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 01:15-17](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:07** The **Messiah** was God's Chosen One who would save the people of the world from sin.
- **17:08** As it happened, the Israelites would have to wait a long time before the **Messiah** came, almost 1,000 years.
- **21:01** From the very beginning, God planned to send the **Messiah**.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the **Messiah** would be one of David's own descendants.
- **21:05** The **Messiah** would start the New Covenant.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the **Messiah** would be a prophet, a priest, and a king.
- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the **Messiah** would be born from a virgin.
- **43:07** "But God raised him to life again to fulfill the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your **Holy One** rot in the grave.'"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both Lord and **Messiah!**"
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus **Christ** so that God will forgive your sins."
- **46:06** Saul reasoned with the Jews, proving that Jesus was the **Messiah**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4899, G3323, G5547

Uses:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- Clan could be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: family, Jethro, tribe)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40-43
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 03:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H441, H1004, H4940

Uses:

- [Micah 2:3-5](#)
- [Micah 5:2-3](#)

compassion, compassionate

Definition:

The term “compassion” refers to a feeling of concern for people, especially for those who are suffering. A “compassionate” person cares about other people and helps them.

- The word “compassion” usually includes caring about people in need, as well as taking action to help them.
- The Bible says that God is compassionate, that is, he is full of love and mercy.
- In Paul’s letter to the Colossians, he tells them to “clothe themselves with compassion.” He is instructing them to care about people and to actively help others who are in need.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal meaning of “compassion” is “bowels of mercy.” This is an expression that means “mercy” or “pity.” Other languages may have their own expression that means this.
- Ways of translating “compassion” could include, “a deep caring for” or “helpful mercy.”
- The term “compassionate” could also be translated as, “caring and helpful” or “deeply loving and merciful.”

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:8-10
- Hosea 13:14
- James 05:9-11
- Jonah 04:1-3
- Mark 01:40-42
- Romans 09:14-16

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2550, H7349, H7355, H7356, G1653, G3356, G3627, G4697, G4834, G4835

Uses:

- Micah 7:19-20

counsel, counselor, advice, advisor

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, “to counsel” could be translated as “to advise” or “to make suggestions” or “to exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, [Holy Spirit](#), [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H2940, H3245, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H5843, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1010, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4824, G4825

Uses:

- [Micah 4:9-10](#)

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, loving kindness, unfailing love

Definition:

This term is used to describe God's commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to his people.

- God made promises to the Israelites in formal agreements called "covenants."
- The "covenant faithfulness" or "covenant loyalty" of Yahweh refers to the fact that he keeps his promises to his people.
- God's faithfulness to keep his covenant promises is an expression of his grace toward his people.
- The term "loyalty" is another word that refers to being committed and dependable, to do and say what has been promised, and what will benefit someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- The way this term is translated will also depend on how the terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term could include, "faithful love" or "loyal, committed love" or "loving dependability."

(See also: covenant, [faithful](#), grace, [Israel](#), [people of God](#), promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:10-11
- Numbers 14:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

Uses:

- [Micah 7:18](#)
- [Micah 7:19-20](#)

cow, calf, bull, cattle

Definition:

The term “cattle” refers to a kind of large, four-legged farm animal that eats grass and is primarily raised for its meat and milk.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- Sometimes the term “cow” is used in a general way to refer to all kinds of cattle.
- In some cultures, cattle are traded in exchange for goods. Sometimes they are used as gifts given to the parents of a young woman a man desires to marry.
- In the Bible, the Jewish people used cattle for sacrifices, especially a certain type called the red heifer.
- A “heifer” is a cow that has not yet had a baby.
- An “ox” is a special type of bull that is used for agricultural work, like pulling a plow.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: heifer, ox, yoke)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 2 Chronicles 11:13-15
- [Luke 13:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 22:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H47, H929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022

Uses:

- [Micah 6:6-8](#)

darkness

Definition:

The term “darkness” literally means an absence of light. There are also several figurative meanings of this term:

- As a metaphor, “darkness” means “impurity” or “evil” or “spiritual blindness.”
- It also refers to anything related to sin and moral corruption.
- The expression “dominion of darkness” refers to all that is evil and ruled by Satan.
- The term “darkness” can also be used as a metaphor for death. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- People who do not know God are said to be “living in darkness,” which means they do not understand or practice righteousness.
- God is light (righteousness) and the darkness (evil) cannot overcome that light.
- The place of punishment for those who reject God is sometimes referred to as “outer darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term literally, with a word in the project language that refers to the absence of light. This could also be a term that refers to the darkness of a room with no light or to the time of day when there is no light.
- For the figurative uses, it is also important to keep the image of darkness in contrast to light, as a way to describe evil and deception in contrast to goodness and truth.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could be, “darkness of night” (as opposed to “light of day”) or “not seeing anything, like at night” or “evil, like a dark place”.

(See also: corrupt, dominion, [kingdom](#), [light](#), redeem, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 05:4-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:10-12](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [Isaiah 05:29-30](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:15-17](#)
- [Joshua 24:7](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H652, H653, H2816, H2821, H2822, H2825, H3990, H3991, H4285, H5890, H6205, G2217, G4652, G4653, G4655, G4656

Uses:

- [Micah 3:5-7](#)
- [Micah 7:7-8](#)

deceive, deceit, deception, deceptive

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit.”

- Another term “deception” also refers to the act of causing someone to believe something that is not true.
- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:13-15](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:3-4](#)
- [Genesis 03:12-13](#)
- [Genesis 31:26-28](#)
- [Leviticus 19:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 27:62-64](#)
- [Micah 06:11-12](#)

{{tag>publish review}}

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H6121, H6231, H6280, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8501, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1389, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

Uses:

- [Micah 6:11-12](#)

declare, declaration

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something.

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [proclaim](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:23-24
- [1 Corinthians 15:31-32](#)
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:15-16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- [Matthew 07:21-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H560, H816, H874, H952, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H6575, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G394, G518, G669, G1107, G1213, G1229, G1335, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1732, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3853, G3870, G3955, G5319, G5419

Uses:

- [Micah 3:8](#)

defile, be defiled

Definition:

The terms “defile” and “be defiled” refer to becoming polluted or dirty. Something can be defiled in a physical, moral, or ritual sense.

- God warned the Israelites to not defile themselves by eating or touching things that he had declared as “unclean” and “unholy.”
- Certain things such as dead bodies and contagious diseases were declared by God to be unclean and would defile a person if they touched them.
- God commanded the Israelites to avoid sexual sins. These would defile them and make them unacceptable to God.
- There were also certain kinds of bodily processes that defiled a person temporarily until he could become ritually pure again.
- In the New Testament, Jesus taught that sinful thoughts and actions are what truly defile a person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “defile” can also be translated as “cause to be unclean” or “cause to be unrighteous” or “cause to be ritually unacceptable.”
- To “be defiled” could be translated as “become unclean” or “be caused to be morally unacceptable (to God)” or “become ritually unacceptable.”

(See also: [unclean](#), clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 23:8-9
- Exodus 20:24-26
- Genesis 34:27-29
- Genesis 49:3-4
- Isaiah 43:27-28
- Leviticus 11:43-45
- [Mark 07:14-16](#)
- [Matthew 15:10-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1351, H1352, H1602, H2490, H2491, H2610, H2930, H2931, H2933, H2936, H5953, G733, G2839, G2840, G3392, G3435, G4696, G5351

Uses:

- [Micah 4:11-12](#)

deliver, deliverer, deliverance

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 01:8-10](#)
- [Acts 07:35-37](#)
- [Galatians 01:3-5](#)
- [Judges 10:10-12](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1350, H2020, H2502, H3052, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4560, H4672, H5337, H5338, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6308, H6403, H6405, H6413, H6475, H6487, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8000, H8199, H8668, G325, G525, G629, G859, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

Uses:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)

dishonor, dishonorable

Definition:

The term “dishonor” means to do something that is disrespectful to someone. This can also cause that person shame or disgrace.

- The term “dishonorable” describes an action that is shameful or that causes someone to be dishonored.
- Sometimes “dishonorable” is used to refer to objects that are not useful for anything important.
- Children are commanded to honor and obey their parents. When children disobey, they dishonor their parents. They are treating their parents in a way that does not honor them.
- The Israelites dishonored Yahweh when they worshiped false gods and practiced immoral behavior.
- The Jews dishonored Jesus by saying that he was possessed by a demon.
- This could be translated as “to not honor” or “to treat with no respect.”
- The noun “dishonor” could be translated as “disrespect” or “loss of honor.”
- Depending on the context, “dishonorable” could also be translated as “not honorable” or “shameful” or “not worthwhile” or “not valuable.”

(See also: disgrace, honor)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:10-11](#)
- [1 Samuel 20:32-34](#)
- [2 Corinthians 06:8-10](#)
- [Ezekiel 22:6-9](#)
- [John 08:48-49](#)
- [Leviticus 18:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: 03639 05034 06173 07036 07043 818 819 2617 pizza

Uses:

- [Micah 7:5-6](#)

divination, diviner, soothsaying, soothsayer

Definition:

The terms “divination” and “soothsaying” refer to the practice of trying to get information from spirits in the supernatural world. A person who does this is sometimes called a “diviner” or “soothsayer.”

- In Old Testament times, God commanded the Israelites to not practice divination or soothsaying.
- God did permit his people to seek information from him using the Urim and Thummim, which were stones that he had designated to be used by the high priest for that purpose. But he did not allow his people to seek information through the help of evil spirits.
- Pagan diviners used different methods of trying to find out information from the spirit world. Sometimes they would examine the inside parts of a dead animal or throw animal bones on the ground, looking for patterns that they would interpret as messages from their false gods.
- In the New Testament, Jesus and the apostles also rejected divination, sorcery, witchcraft, and magic. All these practices involve using the power of evil spirits and are condemned by God.

(See also: apostle, [false god](#), magic, sorcery)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 06:1-2
- [Acts 16:16-18](#)
- Ezekiel 12:24-25
- Genesis 44:3-5
- Jeremiah 27:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1870, H4738, H5172, H6049, H7080, H7081, G4436

Uses:

- [Micah 3:5-7](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 5:12-15](#)

eagle

Definition:

An eagle is a very large, powerful bird of prey that eats small animals such as fish, mice, snakes, and chickens.

- The Bible compares the speed and strength of an army to how fast and suddenly an eagle swoops down to catch its prey.
- Isaiah states that those who trust in the Lord will soar as an eagle does. This is figurative language used to describe the freedom and strength that comes from trusting and obeying God.
- In the book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar's hair length was compared to the length of an eagle's feathers, which can be more than 50 centimeters long.

(See also: Daniel, free, Nebuchadnezzar, [power](#))

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:23-24
- Daniel 07:4-5
- Jeremiah 04:13-15
- Leviticus 11:13-16
- [Revelation 04:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5403, H5404, H7360, G105

Uses:

- [Micah 1:15-16](#)

earth, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Matthew 06:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 11:25-27](#)
- [Zechariah 06:5-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G3749, G4578, G5517

Uses:

- [Micah 4:13](#)

- [Micah 5:4-5](#)
- [Micah 6:1-2](#)

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 41:27-29
- Genesis 41:55-57
- [Matthew 02:13-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to **Egypt** to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)
- [Micah 7:11-13](#)
- [Micah 7:14-15](#)

enslave, in bondage

Definition:

To “enslave” someone means to force that person to serve a master or a ruling country. To be “enslaved” or “in bondage” means to be under the control of something or someone.

- A person who is enslaved or in bondage must serve others without payment; he is not free to do what he wants.
- To “enslave” also means to take away a person’s freedom.
- Another word for “bondage” is “slavery.”
- In a figurative way, human beings are “enslaved” to sin until Jesus frees them from its control and power.
- When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”

(See also: free, [righteous](#), servant)

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:3-5](#)
- [Galatians 04:24-25](#)
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Jeremiah 30:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3533, H5647, G1398, G1402, G2615

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

Euphrates River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called “the River.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Isaiah 07:20-22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G2166

Uses:

- [Micah 7:11-13](#)

everlasting, eternal, eternity

Definition:

The terms “everlasting” and “eternal” have very similar meanings and refer to something that will always exist or that lasts forever.

- The term “eternity” refers to a state of being that has no beginning or end. It can also refer to life that never ends.
- After this present life on earth, humans will spend eternity either in heaven with God or in hell apart from God.
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” are used in the New Testament to refer to living forever with God in heaven.
- The phrase “forever and ever” has the idea of time that never ends and expresses what eternity or eternal life is like.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “eternal” or “everlasting” could include “unending” or “never stopping” or “always continuing.”
- The terms “eternal life” and “everlasting life” could also be translated as “life that never ends” or “life that continues without stopping” or “the raising up of our bodies to live forever.”
- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “eternity” could include “existing outside of time” or “unending life” or “life in heaven.”
- Also consider how this word is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [forever](#), life)

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:1-2](#)
- [1 John 05:11-12](#)
- [Acts 13:46-47](#)
- [Genesis 17:7-8](#)
- [Genesis 48:3-4](#)
- [Isaiah 09:6-7](#)
- [Isaiah 40:27-28](#)
- [Luke 18:18-21](#)
- [Romans 05:20-21](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit **eternal life**?"
- **28:01** One day, a rich young ruler came up to Jesus and asked him, "Good Teacher, what must I do to have **eternal life**?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you ask me about what is good? There is only One who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have **eternal life**, obey God's laws."
- **28:10** Jesus answered, "Everyone who has left houses, brothers, sisters, father, mother, children, or property for my name's sake, will receive 100 times more and will also receive **eternal life**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5703, H5769, H5957, H6924, G126, G165, G166

Uses:

- **Micah 5:2-3**

evil, wicked, wickedness

Definition:

The terms “evil” and “wicked” both refer to anything that is opposed to God’s holy character and will.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:10-11
- [1 Timothy 06:9-10](#)
- [3 John 01:9-10](#)
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:1-3
- Job 08:19-20
- Judges 09:55-57
- [Luke 06:22-23](#)
- [Matthew 07:11-12](#)
- Proverbs 03:7-8
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [02:04](#) ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”

- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2617, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

Uses:

- [Micah 2:1-2](#)
- [Micah 2:3-5](#)
- [Micah 3:1-3](#)
- [Micah 3:4](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 6:9-10](#)

exalt, exalted, exalts, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), glorify, boast, proud)

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 05:5-7](#)
- [2 Samuel 22:47-49](#)
- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)
- [Psalms 018:46-47](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

Uses:

- [Micah 4:1](#)

exile, the Exile

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian Exile” (or “the Exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to exile” could also be translated as “to send away” or “to force out” or “to banish.”
- The term “the Exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Judah](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:13-14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:3-4
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1547, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

Uses:

- [Micah 1:15-16](#)

face

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, “to face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term “to face” could be translated as “to turn toward” or “to look at directly” or “to look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:4-6
- Genesis 33:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

Uses:

- [Micah 3:4](#)

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 06:7](#)
- [Galatians 02:20-21](#)
- [James 02:18-20](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”

- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

Uses:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)

faithful, faithfulness

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: [faith](#), believe)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:9
- [1 Thessalonians 05:23-24](#)
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- [Colossians 01:7-8](#)
- Genesis 24:49
- Isaiah 01:26
- Joshua 02:14
- [Luke 16:10-12](#)
- Numbers 12:6-8
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Psalm 012:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.

- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, G4103

Uses:

- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)

fear, fears, afraid

Definition:

The terms “fear” and “afraid” refer to the unpleasant feeling a person has when there is a threat of harm to himself or others.

- The term “fear” can also refer to a deep respect and awe for a person in authority.
- The phrase “fear of Yahweh,” as well as related terms “fear of God” and “fear of the Lord,” refer to a deep respect of God and the showing of that respect by obeying him. This fear is motivated by knowing that God is holy and hates sin.
- The Bible teaches that a person who fears Yahweh will become wise.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “to fear” can be translated as “to be afraid” or “to deeply respect” or “to revere” or “to be in awe of.”
- The term “afraid” could be translated as “terrified” or “scared” or “fearful.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” could be translated as “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- Note that the phrase “fear of Yahweh” does not occur in the New Testament. The phrase “fear of the Lord” or “fear of the Lord God” is used instead.

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), [power](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [Acts 02:43-45](#)
- [Acts 19:15-17](#)
- Genesis 50:18-21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14-17
- Jonah 01:8-10
- [Luke 12:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 10:28-31](#)
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032,

H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

Uses:

- [Micah 4:4-5](#)
- [Micah 7:16-17](#)

fig**Definition:**

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- [Habakkuk 03:17](#)
- [James 03:11-12](#)
- [Luke 13:6-7](#)
- [Mark 11:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 21:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

Uses:

- [Micah 4:4-5](#)

fire

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:9-10
- [2 Thessalonians 01:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [John 15:5-7](#)
- [Luke 03:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

Uses:

- [Micah 1:2-4](#)

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:32-34
- [Luke 02:6-7](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

Uses:

- [Micah 6:6-8](#)

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle, oxen, or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- For example, in English the term “herd” can also be used for sheep or goats, but in the Bible text it is not used this way.
- The term “flock” in English is also used for a group of birds, but it can not be used for pigs, oxen, or cattle.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals.
- For verses that refer to “flocks and herds” it may be better to add “of sheep” or “of cattle” for example, if the language does not have different words to refer to different kinds of animal groups.

(See also: goat, ox, pig, [sheep](#),)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:10-11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- [Luke 02:8-9](#)
- [Matthew 08:30-32](#)
- [Matthew 26:30-32](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

Uses:

- [Micah 2:12-13](#)
- [Micah 4:6-8](#)
- [Micah 5:4-5](#)
- [Micah 5:8-9](#)
- [Micah 7:14-15](#)

forever

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “forever” refers to never-ending time. Sometimes it is used figuratively to mean “a very long time.”

- The term “forever and ever” emphasizes that something will always happen or exist.
- The phrase “forever and ever” is a way of expressing what eternity or eternal life is. It also has the idea of time that never ends.
- God said that David’s throne would last “forever.” This is referred to the fact that David’s descendant Jesus will reign as king forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated by “always” or “never ending.”
- The phrase “will last forever” could also be translated as “always exist” or “will never stop” or “will always continue.”
- The emphatic phrase “forever and ever” could also be translated as “for always and always” or “not ever ending” or “which never, ever ends.”
- David’s throne lasting forever could be translated as “David’s descendant will reign forever” or “a descendant of David will always be reigning.”

(See also: David, [everlasting](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:32-33
- 2 Samuel 03:28-30
- Daniel 07:17-18
- Exodus 15:17-18
- [Hebrews 06:19-20](#)
- [Hebrews 10:11-14](#)
- Job 04:20-21
- Psalms 021:3-4
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)
- [Revelation 22:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3117, H4481, H5705, H5331, H5703, H5769, H5865, H5957, G165, G166, G1336

Uses:

- Micah 2:9-11
- Micah 4:4-5
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 7:18

foundation, founded

Definition:

The verb “found” means build, create, or lay a base for. The phrase “founded on” means supported by or based on. A “foundation” is the base of support on which something is built or created.

- The foundation of a house or building must be strong and dependable in order to support the entire structure.
- The term “foundation” can also refer to the beginning of something or to the time when something was first created.
- In a figurative sense, believers in Christ are compared to a building that is founded on the teachings of the apostles and prophets, with Christ himself being the cornerstone of the building.
- A “foundation stone” was a stone that was laid as part of the foundation. These stones were tested to make sure they were strong enough to support an entire building.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase “before the foundation of the world” could be translated as “before the creation of the world” or “before the time when the world first existed” or “before everything was first created.”
- The term “founded on” could be translated as “securely built on” or “firmly based on.”
- Depending on the context, “foundation” could be translated as “strong base” or “solid support” or “beginning” or “creation.”

(See also: cornerstone, create)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:37-38
- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- Ezekiel 13:13-14
- [Luke 14:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 13:34-35](#)
- [Matthew 25:34-36](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H134, H787, H803, H808, H2713, H3245, H3247, H3248, H4143, H4144, H4146, H4328, H4349, H4527, H6884, H8356, G2310, G2311, G2602

Uses:

- [Micah 1:6-7](#)
- [Micah 6:1-2](#)

fruit, fruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces—”that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”

- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: descendant, grain, *grape*, *Holy Spirit*, *vine*, womb)

Bible References:

- *Galatians 05:22-24*
- *Genesis 01:11-13*
- *Luke 08:14-15*
- *Matthew 03:7-9*
- *Matthew 07:15-17*

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3, H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2173, H2233, H2981, H3206, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H4395, H5108, H5208, H6500, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8256, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352, G6013

Uses:

- *Micah 6:6-8*
- *Micah 7:11-13*

gate, gate bar

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place to lock the gate.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made, because city walls were thick enough to have gateways that produced cool shade from the hot sun. Citizens found it pleasant to sit in the shade to conduct their business and even to judge legal cases.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:23-25](#)
- [Acts 10:17-18](#)
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Genesis 24:59-60
- [Matthew 07:13-14](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, H8651, G2374, G4439, G4440

Uses:

- [Micah 1:8-10](#)
- [Micah 1:11-12](#)
- [Micah 2:12-13](#)

Gath

Facts:

Gath was one of the five major cities of the Philistines. It was located north of Ekron and east of Ashdod and Ashkelon.

- The Philistine warrior Goliath was from the city of Gath.
- During the time of Samuel, the Philistines stole the ark of the covenant from Israel and took it to their pagan temple at Ashdod. It was then moved to Gath and later to Ekron. But God punished the people of those cities with disease, so they sent it back to Israel again.
- When David was escaping from King Saul, he fled to Gath and lived there awhile with his two wives and with six hundred men who were his loyal followers.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gaza, Goliath, Philistines)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:39-40
- 1 Samuel 05:8-9
- 2 Chronicles 26:6-8
- Joshua 11:21-22

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:8-10](#)
- [Micah 1:13-14](#)

gift, gifts

Definition:

The term “gift” refers to anything that is given or offered to someone. A gift is given without the expectation of getting anything in return

- Money, food, clothing, or other things given to poor people are called “gifts.”
- In the Bible, an offering or sacrifice given to God is also called a gift.
- The gift of salvation is something God gives us through faith in Jesus.
- In the New Testament, the term “gifts” is also used to refer to special spiritual abilities that God gives to all Christians for serving other people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “gift” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “something that is given.”
- In the context of someone having a gift or special ability that comes from God, the term “gift from the Spirit” could be translated as “spiritual ability” or “special ability from the Holy Spirit” or “special spiritual skill that God gave.”

(See also: [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:1-3](#)
- [2 Samuel 11:6-8](#)
- [Acts 08:20-23](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 11:17-18](#)
- [Acts 24:17-19](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 05:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H814, H4503, H4864, H4976, H4978, H4979, H4991, H5078, H5083, H5379, H7810, H8641, G334, G1390, G1394, G1431, G1434, G1435, G3311, G5486

Uses:

- [Micah 1:6-7](#)

Gilead

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:21-22
- 1 Samuel 11:1-2
- Amos 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:19-21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 7:14-15](#)

Gilgal

Facts:

Gilgal was a town north of Jericho and was the first place that the Israelites camped after crossing the Jordan River to enter Canaan.

- At Gilgal, Joshua set up twelve stones taken from the dry river bed of the Jordan River that they had just crossed over.
- Gilgal was the city that Elijah and Elisha were leaving as they crossed the Jordan when Elijah was taken up to heaven.
- There were also several other places called “Gilgal” in the Old Testament.
- The word “gilgal” means “circle of stones,” perhaps referring to a place where a circular altar was built.
- In the Old Testament, this name almost always occurs as “the gilgal.” This may indicate that it was not a specific place name but rather was a description of a certain kind of place.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Elijah, , Elisha, Jericho, Jordan River)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 07:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:1-2
- Hosea 04:15-16
- Judges 02:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1537

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

glean, gleaning

Definition:

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God told the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain.
- A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, grain, harvest, Ruth)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:5-7
- Ruth 02:1-2
- Ruth 02:15-16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955### Uses:
- [Micah 7:1-2](#)

God

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being.”
- Other ways to translate “God” could be “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god.
- Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, [Holy Spirit](#), [idol](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [Colossians 01:15-17](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2

- Genesis 01:1-2
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:18-20
- Jeremiah 05:4-6
- John 01:1-3
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Micah 04:4-5
- Philippians 02:5-8
- Proverbs 24:11-12
- Psalms 047:8-9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

Uses:

- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:4-5
- Micah 5:2-3
- Micah 5:4-5
- Micah 6:6-8
- Micah 7:7-8
- Micah 7:10
- Micah 7:16-17
- Micah 7:18

god, gods, goddess

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), [Asherah](#), Baal, Molech, [idol](#), demon, [image](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:43](#)
- [Acts 19:26-27](#)
- [Galatians 04:8-9](#)
- Genesis 35:1-3
- Isaiah 44:20
- Psalms 081:8-10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt’s **gods**.

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5236, H8267, G2299

Uses:

- **Micah 4:4-5**

good, goodness

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Genesis 01:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 02:9-10](#)
- [Genesis 02:15-17](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, ”It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** ”God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** ”You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:01** ”**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, ”Why do you call me ’**good?**’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

Uses:

- **Micah 2:6-8**
- **Micah 3:1-3**
- **Micah 6:6-8**

grape

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called “raisins” and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God’s kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24-25
- Hosea 09:10
- Job 15:31-33
- [Luke 06:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 07:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 21:33-34](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:13-15](#)
- [Micah 7:1-2](#)

guilt, guilty

Definition:

The term “guilt” refers to the fact of having sinned or committed a crime.

- To “be guilty” means to have done something morally wrong, that is, to have disobeyed God.
- The opposite of “guilty” is “innocent.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages might translate “guilt” as “the weight of sin” or “the counting of sins.”
- Ways to translate “to be guilty” could include a word or phrase that means, “to be at fault” or “having done something morally wrong” or “having committed a sin.”

(See also: [innocent](#), [iniquity](#), [punish](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:36-38
- Isaiah 06:6-7
- [James 02:10-11](#)
- [John 19:4-6](#)
- Jonah 01:14-16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [39:02](#) They brought many witnesses who lied about him (Jesus). However, their statements did not agree with each other, so the Jewish leaders could not prove he was **guilty** of anything.
- [39:11](#) After speaking with Jesus, Pilate went out to the crowd and said, “I find no **guilt** in this man.” But the Jewish leaders and the crowd shouted, “Crucify him!” Pilate replied, “He is not **guilty**.” But they shouted even louder. Then Pilate said a third time, “He is not **guilty**!”
- [40:04](#) Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Don’t you fear God? We are **guilty**, but this man is innocent.
- [49:10](#) Because of your sin, you are **guilty** and deserve to die.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H816, H817, H818, H5352, H5355, G338, G1777, G3784, G5267

Uses:

- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)

hand, right hand, to hand over

Definition:

There are several figurative ways that “hand” is used in the Bible:

- To “hand” something to someone means to put something into that person’s hands.
- The term “hand” is often used in reference to God’s power and action, such as when God says “Has not my hand made all these things?” (See: [metonymy](#))
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- Some other figurative uses of “hand” include:
 - To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
 - To “save from the hand of” means to stop someone from harming someone else.
 - To be “close at hand” means to be “nearby.”
 - The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
 - The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, “by the hand of the Lord” means that the Lord is the one who caused something to happen.
- Placing hands on someone is often done while speaking a blessing over that person.
- The term “laying on of hands” refers to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service or to pray for healing.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that this part of the letter was physically written down by him, rather than spoken to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- When “hand” refers to the person, such as in “the hand of God did this,” it could be translated as “God did this.”
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression

with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), captive, honor, [power](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Acts 11:19-21](#)
- [Genesis 09:5-7](#)
- [Genesis 14:19-20](#)
- [John 03:34-36](#)
- [Mark 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 06:3-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H405, H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G1764, G2021, G2092, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G4475, G5495, G5496, G5497

Uses:

- [Micah 4:9-10](#)
- [Micah 5:6-7](#)
- [Micah 5:8-9](#)
- [Micah 5:12-15](#)
- [Micah 7:3-4](#)
- [Micah 7:16-17](#)

head

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “head” is used with several figurative meanings.

- Often this term is used to refer to being in authority over people, as in “you have made me the head over nations.” This could be translated as “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over...”
- Jesus is called the “head of the church.” Just as a person’s head guides and directs the members of its body, so Jesus guides and directs the members of his “body,” the Church.
- The New Testament teaches that a husband is the “head” or authority of his wife. He is given the responsibility of leading and guiding his wife and family.
- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means” he will never cut or shave his hair.”
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, as in the “head of the street.”
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top parts of a wheat or barley plant that contains the seeds.
- Another figurative use for “head” is when it is used to represent the whole person, as in “this gray head,” referring to an elderly person, or as in “the head of Joseph,” which refers to Joseph. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “the one who leads and directs” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “head of” can refer to the whole person and so this expression could be translated using just the person’s name. For example, “the head of Joseph” could simply be translated as “Joseph.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “beginning” or “source” or “ruler” or “leader” or “top.”

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22

- [Colossians 02:10-12](#)
- [Colossians 02:18-19](#)
- Numbers 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 2:12-13](#)

Hezekiah

Definition:

Hezekiah was the 13th king over the kingdom of Judah. He was a king who trusted and obeyed God.

- Unlike his father Ahaz, who had been an evil king, King Hezekiah was a good king who destroyed all the places of idol worship in Judah.
- One time when Hezekiah became very sick and almost died, he earnestly prayed that God would spare his life. God healed him and allowed him to live 15 more years.
- As a sign to Hezekiah that this would happen, God performed a miracle and caused the sun to move backwards in the sky.
- God also answered Hezekiah's prayer to save his people from King Sennacherib of Assyria, who was attacking them.

(See also: [Ahaz](#), [Assyria](#), [idol](#), [Judah](#), [Sennacherib](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:13-14
- 2 Kings 16:19-20
- Hosea 01:1-2
- [Matthew 01:9-11](#)
- Proverbs 25:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:1](#)

high places

Definition:

The term “high places” refers to the altars and shrines that were used for worshipping idols. They were usually built on higher ground, such as on a hill or mountainside.

- Many of the kings of Israel sinned against God by building altars to false gods on these high places. This led the people to become deeply involved in worshipping idols.
- It often happened that when a God-fearing king started ruling in Israel or Judah, often he would remove the high places or altars in order to stop the worship of these idols.
- However, some of these good kings were careless and did not remove the high places, which resulted in the entire nation of Israel would continue to worship idols.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “elevated places for idol worship” or “hilltop idol shrines” or “idol altar mounds.”
- Make sure it is clear that this term refers to the idol altars, not just to the high place where those altars were located.

(See also: altar, [idol](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 09:12-13
- 2 Kings 16:3-4
- Amos 04:12-13
- Deuteronomy 33:29
- Ezekiel 06:1-3
- [Habakkuk 03:18-19](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:2-4](#)
- [Micah 1:5](#)

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as “the Spirit” and “Spirit of Yahweh” and “Spirit of truth.”
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God’s Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God’s will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate “holy” and “spirit.”
- Ways to translate this term could also include “Pure Spirit” or “Spirit who is Holy” or “God the Spirit.”

(See also: [holy](#), [spirit](#), [God](#), [Lord](#), God the Father, Son of God, [gift](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:9-10
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 08:14-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:4-5
- [Matthew 12:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 28:18-19](#)
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God’s Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan’s temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.

- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

Uses:

- **Micah 2:6-8**
- **Micah 3:8**

holy, holiness

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), consecrate, sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 03:11-13](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Colossians 01:21-23](#)
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Lamentations 04:1-2
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Matthew 07:6](#)
- [Romans 01:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.

- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2623, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G3741, G3742,

Uses:

- **Introduction to Micah**
- **Micah 1:2-4**

horse

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:3-4
- 2 Kings 02:11-12
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- [Zechariah 06:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:13-14](#)
- [Micah 5:10-11](#)

house

Definition:

The term “house” is often used figuratively in the Bible.

- Sometimes it means “household,” referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Often “house” refers to a person’s descendants or other relatives. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to where God is or dwells.
- In Hebrews 3, “God’s house” is used as a metaphor to refer to God’s people or, more generally, to everything pertaining to God.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.”
- “House of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 07:47-50](#)
- Genesis 39:3-4
- Genesis 41:39-41
- [Luke 08:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 15:24-26](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 1:5
- Micah 2:1-2
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 3:1-3
- Micah 3:9-11
- Micah 4:1
- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 6:3-5
- Micah 6:9-10
- Micah 6:16

humble, humbles, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- [James 01:19-21](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 04:8-10](#)
- [Luke 14:10-11](#)
- [Luke 18:13-14](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:11-12](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God. ***34:10** ”God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:6-8](#)

idol, idolatrous

Definition:

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

(See also: [false god](#), [image](#), [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [Acts 07:41-42](#)
- [Acts 15:19-21](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- Exodus 32:1-2
- [Galatians 05:19-21](#)
- Psalm 031:5-7
- [Romans 02:21-22](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:05** ”Do not make **idols** or worship them, because I, Yahweh, am a jealous God.” ***13:12** Aaron made a golden **idol** in the shape of a calf. The people began to wildly worship the **idol** and make sacrifices to it! ***14:03** ”You must completely destroy all of their **idols**. If you do not obey me, you will worship their **idols** instead of me.” ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel worshiped **idols**. This kind of worship often included sexual immorality and sometimes even child sacrifice. ***19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshipping **idols** and to start showing justice and mercy to others.

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- Micah 1:6-7

image, carved image, carved figure, cast metal figure

Definition:

These terms are all used to refer to idols that have been made for worshiping a false god. In the context of worshiping idols, the term “image” is a shortened form of “carved image.”

- A “carved image” or “carved figure” is a wooden object that has been made to look like an animal, person, or thing.
- A “cast metal figure” is an object or statue created by melting metal and pouring it into a mold that is in the shape of an object, animal, or person.
- These wooden and metal objects were used in the worship of false gods.
- The term “image” when referring to an idol could either refer to a wooden or metal idol.

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to an idol, the term “image” could also be translated as “statue” or “engraved idol” or “carved religious object.”
- It may be more clear in some languages to always use a descriptive word with this term, such as “carved image” or “cast metal figure,” even in places where only the term “image” or “figure” is in the original text.
- Make sure it is clear that this term is different than the term used to refer to being in the image of God.

(See also: [false god](#), [God](#), [idol](#), image of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:9-10
- [Acts 07:43](#)
- Isaiah 21:8-9
- [Matthew 22:20-22](#)
- [Romans 01:22-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:6-7](#)
- [Micah 5:12-15](#)

inherit, inheritance, heritage, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent or other person because of a special relationship with that person. The “inheritance” is what is received.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- A spiritual inheritance is everything that God gives people who trust in Jesus, including blessings in the present life as well as eternal life with him.
- The Bible also calls God’s people his inheritance, which means that they belong to him; they are his valued possession.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.
- There is also a figurative or spiritual sense in which people who belong to God are said to “inherit the land.” This means that they will prosper and be blessed by God in both physical and spiritual ways.
- In the New Testament, God promises that those who trust in Jesus will “inherit salvation” and “inherit eternal life.” It is also expressed as, “inherit the kingdom of God.” This is a spiritual inheritance that lasts forever.
- There are other figurative meanings for these terms:
- The Bible says that wise people will “inherit glory” and righteous people will “inherit good things.”
- To “inherit the promises” means to receive the good things that God has promised to give his people.
- This term is also used in a negative sense to refer to foolish or disobedient people who “inherit the wind” or “inherit folly.” This means they receive the consequences of their sinful actions, including punishment and worthless living.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- When God’s people are referred to as his inheritance this could be translated as “valued ones belonging to him.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions” or “person chosen to receive (God’s) spiritual possessions or blessings.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “blessings from God” or “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 06:9-11**
- **1 Peter 01:3-5**
- 2 Samuel 21:2-3
- **Acts 07:4-5**
- Deuteronomy 20:16-18
- **Galatians 05:19-21**
- Genesis 15:6-8
- **Hebrews 09:13-15**
- Jeremiah 02:7-8
- **Luke 15:11-12**
- **Matthew 19:29-30**
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

Uses:

- **Micah 2:1-2**
- **Micah 7:14-15**
- **Micah 7:18**

iniquity, iniquities

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16-17
- [Habakkuk 02:12-14](#)
- [Matthew 13:40-43](#)
- [Matthew 23:27-28](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

Uses:

- [Micah 2:1-2](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 7:19-20](#)

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- The frequently occurring expression “innocent blood” could be translated as “people who did nothing wrong to deserve being killed.”
- The expression “shed innocent blood” could be translated as “kill innocent people” or “kill people who did nothing wrong to deserve it.”
- In the context of someone being killed, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not guilty for the death of.”
- When talking about people not hearing the good news about Jesus but not accepting it, “innocent of the blood of” could be translated as “not responsible for whether they remain spiritually dead or not” or “not responsible for whether they accept this message.”
- When Judas said “I have betrayed innocent blood,” he was saying “I have betrayed a man who did nothing wrong” or “I have caused the death of a man who was sinless.”
- When Pilate said about Jesus “I am innocent of the blood of this innocent man,” this could be translated as “I am not responsible for the killing of this man who has done nothing wrong to deserve it.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [1 Samuel 19:4-5](#)
- [Acts 20:25-27](#)
- [Exodus 23:6-9](#)
- [Jeremiah 22:17-19](#)
- [Job 09:21-24](#)
- [Romans 16:17-18](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, "Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**."
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, "Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God." *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

Uses:

- **Micah 6:11-12**

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term “Israel” is the name that God gave to Jacob. It means “he struggles with God.”

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the “people of Israel” or the “nation of Israel” or the “Israelites.”
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called “Judah,” and the northern kingdom, called “Israel.”
- Often the term “Israel” can be translated as “the people of Israel” or “the nation of Israel,” depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- [Acts 02:34-36](#)
- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- [Acts 13:23-25](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 24:21](#)
- [Mark 12:28-31](#)
- [Matthew 02:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 27:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 03:4-5](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**. ***09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities. ***09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy. ***10:01** They said, “This is what the God of **Israel** says, ‘Let my people go!’” ***14:12** But despite all this, the people of **Israel** complained and grumbled against God and against Moses. ***15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites. ***15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave **Israel** peace along all its borders. ***16:16** So God punished **Israel** again for worshiping idols. ***43:06** “Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 1:5
- Micah 1:13-14
- Micah 1:15-16
- Micah 2:12-13
- Micah 3:1-3
- Micah 3:8
- Micah 3:9-11
- Micah 5:1
- Micah 5:2-3
- Micah 6:1-2

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:11-13](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- Genesis 25:24-26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 08:11-13](#)
- [Matthew 22:31-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 1:5
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 2:12-13
- Micah 3:1-3
- Micah 3:8
- Micah 3:9-11
- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 5:6-7
- Micah 5:8-9
- Micah 7:19-20

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name “Jerusalem” is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include “Salem” “city of Jebus,” and “Zion.” Both “Jerusalem” and “Salem,” have the root meaning of “peace.”
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called “Zion” which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David’s son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going “up” to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), [Christ](#), David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 04:26-27](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 04:9-11](#)
- [Luke 13:4-5](#)
- [Mark 03:7-8](#)
- [Mark 03:20-22](#)
- [Matthew 03:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 04:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.

- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 1:1
- Micah 1:5
- Micah 1:8-10
- Micah 1:11-12
- Micah 3:9-11
- Micah 3:12
- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 5:1

Jotham

Definition:

In the Old Testament, there were three men with the name Jotham.

- One man named Jotham was the youngest son of Gideon. Jotham helped defeat his older brother Abimelech, who had killed all the rest of their brothers.
- Another man named Jotham was a king over Judah for sixteen years following the death of his father Uzziah (Azariah).
- Like his father, King Jotham obeyed God and was a good king.
- However, by not removing the places of idol worship he caused the people of Judah to later turn away from God again.
- Jotham is also one of the ancestors listed in the genealogy of Jesus Christ in the book of Matthew.

(See also: Abimelech, [Ahaz](#), Gideon, Uzziah)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 26:21
- 2 Kings 15:4-5
- Isaiah 01:1
- Judges 09:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:1](#)

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah."

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), Jew, [Judah](#), Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:9-10
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:1-2
- [Luke 03:33-35](#)
- Ruth 01:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:1](#)
- [Micah 1:8-10](#)
- [Micah 5:2-3](#)

Judah, kingdom of Judah

Facts:

The tribe of Judah was the largest of the twelve tribes of Israel. The kingdom of Judah was made up of the tribes of Judah and Benjamin.

- After King Solomon died, the nation of Israel was divided into two kingdoms: Israel and Judah. The kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom, located west of the Salt Sea.
- The capital city of the kingdom of Judah was Jerusalem.
- Eight kings of Judah obeyed Yahweh and led the people to worship him. The other kings of Judah were evil and led the people to worship idols.
- Over 120 years after Assyria defeated Israel (the northern kingdom), Judah was conquered by the nation of Babylon. The Babylonians destroyed the city and the temple, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives.

(See also: [Judah](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 30:26-28
- 2 Samuel 12:7-8
- Hosea 05:14-15
- Jeremiah 07:33-34
- Judges 01:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

***18:07** Only two tribes remained faithful to him (Rehoboam). These two tribes became the **kingdom of Judah**.\ ***18:10** The **kingdoms of Judah** and Israel became enemies and often fought against each other.\ ***18:13** The **kings of Judah** were descendants of David. Some of these kings were good men who ruled justly and worshiped God. But most of **Judah's** kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols.\ ***20:01** The **kingdoms of Israel and Judah** both sinned against God.\ ***20:05** The people in the **kingdom of Judah** saw how God had punished the people of the kingdom of Israel for not believing and obeying him. But they still worshiped idols, including the gods of the Canaanites.\ ***20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the Babylonians, to attack the **kingdom of Judah**.\ ***20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of **the kingdom of Judah** to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.\

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:5](#)

judge

Definition:

A judge is a person who decides what is right or wrong when there are disputes between people, usually in matters that pertain to the law.

- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a judge because he is the one perfect judge who makes the final decisions about what is right or wrong.
- After the people of Israel entered the land of Canaan and before they had kings to rule them, God appointed leaders called “judges” to lead them in times of trouble. Often these judges were military leaders who rescued the Israelites by defeating their enemies.
- The term “judge” could also be called “decision-maker” or “leader” or “deliverer” or “governor,” depending on the context.

(See also: governor, [judge](#), [law](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:6-8](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Luke 11:18-20](#)
- [Luke 12:13-15](#)
- [Luke 18:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 05:25-26](#)
- [Ruth 01:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 7:3-4](#)

judge, judges, judgment, judgments

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether something is morally right or wrong.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “to judge” could include “to decide” or “to condemn” or “to punish” or “to decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, [judge](#), judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [1 Kings 03:7-9](#)
- [Acts 10:42-43](#)
- [Isaiah 03:13-15](#)
- [James 02:1-4](#)
- [Luke 06:37](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Psalm 054:1-3](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

Uses:

- **Micah 3:9-11**
- **Micah 4:2-3**
- **Micah 7:9**

just, justice, justly

Definition:

These terms refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."

(See also: [judge](#), [righteous](#), upright)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:14-17
- [Acts 28:3-4](#)
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:1-3
- [Luke 18:3-5](#)
- [Luke 21:20-22](#)
- [Luke 23:39-41](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)
- [Micah 03:8](#)
- [Revelation 15:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.

- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3477, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

Uses:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 3:1-3](#)
- [Micah 3:8](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 6:6-8](#)
- [Micah 7:9](#)

king

Definition:

The term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a city, state, or country.

- A king was usually chosen to rule because of his family relation to previous kings.
- When a king died, it was usually his oldest son who became the next king.
- In ancient times, the king had absolute authority over the people in his kingdom.
- Rarely the term “king” was used to refer to someone who was not a true king, such as “King Herod” in the New Testament.
- In the Bible, God is often referred to as a king who rules over his people.
- The “kingdom of God” refers to God’s rule over his people.
- Jesus was called “king of the Jews,” “king of Israel,” and “king of kings.”
- When Jesus comes back, he will rule as king over the world.
- This term could also be translated as “supreme chief” or “absolute leader” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” could be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 06:15-16](#)
- [2 Kings 05:17-19](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:3-5](#)
- [Acts 07:9-10](#)
- [Acts 13:21-22](#)
- [John 01:49-51](#)
- [Luke 01:5-7](#)
- [Luke 22:24-25](#)
- [Matthew 05:33-35](#)
- [Matthew 14:8-9](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly. ***16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them. ***16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had. ***17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him. ***21:06** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**. ***48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 1:1
- Micah 1:13-14
- Micah 2:12-13
- Micah 4:9-10
- Micah 6:3-5

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [2 Timothy 04:17-18](#)
- [Colossians 01:13-14](#)
- [John 18:36-37](#)
- [Mark 03:23-25](#)
- [Matthew 04:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 16:27-28](#)
- [Revelation 01:9-11](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation."
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon's death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- **Micah 4:6-8**

labor pains, in labor

Definition:

A woman who is “in labor” is experiencing the pains that lead up to the birth of her child. These are called “labor pains.”

- In his letter to the Galatians, the apostle Paul used this term figuratively to describe his own intense striving to help his fellow believers become more and more like Christ.
- The analogy of labor pains is also used in the Bible to describe how disasters in the last days will happen with increasing frequency and intensity.

(See also: labor, [last day](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:19-20
- [Galatians 04:19-20](#)
- Isaiah 13:6-8
- Jeremiah 13:20-21
- Psalms 048:4-6
- [Romans 08:20-22](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 4:9-10](#)
- [Micah 5:2-3](#)

lament, laments, lamentation

Definition:

The terms “lament” and “lamentation” refer to a strong expression of mourning, sorrow, or grief.

- Sometimes this includes deep regret for sin, or compassion for people who have experienced disaster.
- A lamentation could include moaning, weeping, or wailing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “to lament” could be translated as “to deeply mourn” or “to wail in grief” or “to be sorrowful.”
- A “lamentation” (or a “lament”) could be translated as “loud wailing and weeping” or “deep sorrow” or “sorrowful sobbing” or “mournful moaning.”

Bible References:

- Amos 08:9-10
- Ezekiel 32:1-2
- Jeremiah 22:17-19
- Job 27:15-17
- Lamentations 02:5-6
- Lamentations 02:8-9
- **Micah 02:3-5**
- Psalm 102:1-2
- **Zechariah 11:1-3**

Word Data:

- Strong's: H56, H421, H578, H592, H1058, H4553, H5091, H5092, H5594, H6088, H6969, H7015, H8567, G2354, G2355, G2870, G2875

Uses:

- **Micah 1:8-10**
- **Micah 2:3-5**

last day, last days, latter days

Definition:

The term “last days” or “latter days” refers generally to the time period at the end of the current age.

- This time period will have an unknown duration.
- The “last days” are a time of judgment upon those who have turned away from God.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “last days” can also be translated as “final days” or “end times.”
- In some contexts, this could be translated as “end of the world” or “when this world ends.”

(See also: day of the Lord, [judge](#), turn, world)

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 03:3-4](#)
- Daniel 10:14-15
- [Hebrews 01:1-3](#)
- Isaiah 02:1-2
- [James 05:1-3](#)
- Jeremiah 23:19-20
- [John 11:24-26](#)
- [Micah 04:1](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H3117, G2078, G2250

Uses:

- [Micah 4:1](#)

law, law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms “law” and “God’s law” are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
- the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
- all the laws given to Moses
- the first five books of the Old Testament
- the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
- all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the law and the prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 15:5-6](#)
- Daniel 09:12-14
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- [Galatians 02:15-16](#)
- [Luke 24:44](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- Nehemiah 10:28-29

- [Romans 03:19-20](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\
- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\<

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

Uses:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4:2-3](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)

light

Definition:

There are several figurative uses of the term “light” in the Bible. It is often used as a metaphor for righteousness, holiness, and truth. (See: [Metaphor](#))

- Jesus said, “I am the light of the world” to express that he brings God’s true message to the world and rescues people from the darkness of their sin.
- Christians are commanded to “walk in the light,” which means they should be living the way God wants them to and avoiding evil.
- The apostle John stated that “God is light” and in him there is no darkness at all.
- Light and darkness are complete opposites. Darkness is the absence of all light.
- Jesus said that he was “the light of the world” and that his followers should shine like lights in the world by living in a way that clearly shows how great God is.
- “Walking in the light” represents living in a way that pleases God, doing what is good and right. Walking in darkness represents living in rebellion against God, doing evil things.

Translation Suggestions:

- When translating, it is important to keep the literal terms “light” and “darkness” even when they are used figuratively.
- It may be necessary to explain the comparison in the text. For example, “walk as children of light” could be translated as, “live openly righteous lives, like someone who walks in bright sunlight.”
- Make sure that the translation of “light” does not refer to an object that gives light, such as a lamp. The translation of this term should refer to the light itself.

(See also: [darkness](#), [holy](#), [righteous](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [2 Corinthians 04:5-6](#)
- [Acts 26:15-18](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [John 01:4-5](#)
- [Matthew 05:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 06:22-24](#)
- [Nehemiah 09:12-13](#)
- [Revelation 18:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H216, H217, H3313, H3974, H4237, H5051, H5094, H5105, H5216, H6348, H7052, H7837, G681, G796, G1645, G2985, G3088, G5338, G5457, G5458, G5460, G5462

Uses:

- Micah 2:1-2
- Micah 7:7-8
- Micah 7:9

lion

Definition:

A lion is a large, cat-like, that has animal, with powerful teeth and claws for killing and tearing apart its prey.

- Lions have powerful bodies and great speed to catch their prey. Their fur is short and golden-brown.
- Male lions have a mane of hair that encircles their heads.
- Lions kill other animals to eat them and can be dangerous to human beings.
- When King David was a boy, he killed lions that tried to attack the sheep he was caring for.
- Samson also killed a lion, with his bare hands.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: David, leopard, Samson, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:22-23
- 1 Kings 07:27-29
- Proverbs 19:11-12
- Psalms 017:11-12
- [Revelation 05:3-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 5:8-9](#)

Lord

Facts:

The term “Lord” refers to someone who has ownership or authority over people. It is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULB and UDB, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.

Translation Suggestions:

- Some languages translate this term as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [lord](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:3-5](#)
- Daniel 09:9-11
- Daniel 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 18:29-30
- [Hebrews 12:14-17](#)
- Joshua 03:9-11
- [Jude 01:5-6](#)
- Lamentations 02:1-2

- Luke 01:30-33
- Malachi 03:1-3
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Revelation 15:3-4
- Romans 06:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H4756, G1203, G2962

Uses:

- Micah 4:13

Lord Yahweh, Yahweh God

Facts:

In the Old Testament, “Lord Yahweh” is frequently used to refer to the one true God.

- The term “Lord” is a divine title and “Yahweh” is God’s personal name.
- “Yahweh” is also often combined with the term “God” to form “Yahweh God.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If some form of “Yahweh” is used for the translation of God’s personal name, the terms “Lord Yahweh” and “Yahweh God” can be translated literally. Also consider how the term “Lord” is translated in other contexts when referring to God.
- Some languages put titles after the name and would translate this as “Yahweh Lord.” Consider what is natural in the project language: should the title “Lord” come before or after “Yahweh”?
- “Yahweh God” could also be rendered as “God who is called Yahweh” or “God who is the Living One” or “I am, who is God.”
- If the translation follows the tradition of rendering “Yahweh” as “Lord” or “LORD,” the term “Lord Yahweh” could be translated as “Lord God” or “God who is the Lord.” Other possible translations could be, “Master LORD” or “God the LORD.”
- The term “Lord Yahweh” should not be rendered as “Lord LORD” because readers may not notice the difference in letter size that has traditionally been used to distinguish these two words.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:3-4](#)
- [2 Samuel 07:21-23](#)
- [Deuteronomy 03:23-25](#)
- [Ezekiel 39:25-27](#)
- [Ezekiel 45:18-20](#)
- [Jeremiah 44:26-28](#)
- [Judges 06:22-24](#)
- [Micah 01:2-4](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H136, H430 H3068, G2316, G2962

Uses:

- [Micah 1:2-4](#)

lots, casting lots

Definition:

A “lot” is a marked object that is chosen from among other similar objects as a way of deciding something. “Casting lots” referred to tossing marked objects onto the ground or other surface.

- Often the lots were small marked stones or pieces of broken pottery.
- Some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- The practice of casting lots was used by the Israelites to find out what God wanted them to do.
- As in the time of Zechariah and Elizabeth, it was also used to choose which priest would perform a specific duty in the temple at a specific time.
- The soldiers who crucified Jesus cast lots to decide who would get to keep Jesus’ robe.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “drawing lots” or “rolling lots.” Make sure the translation of “cast” does not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- Depending on the context, the term “lot” could also be translated as “marked stone” or “pottery piece” or “stick” or “piece of straw.”
- If a decision is made “by lot” this could be translated as, “by drawing (or throwing) lots.”

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 01:6-7
- [Luke 01:8-10](#)
- [Luke 23:33-34](#)
- [Mark 15:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 27:35-37](#)
- Psalms 022:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 2:3-5](#)

love, loves, loving, loved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for “love” some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.
2. Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
3. When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
4. In the ULB, the word “love” refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.
5. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.
6. This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
7. The term can also be used in such contexts as, “They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet.” This means that they “like very much” or “greatly desire” to do that.
8. The word “love” can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.
9. In the figurative expression “Jacob I have loved, but Esau I have hated,” the term “loved” refers to God's choosing of Jacob to be in a covenant relationship with him. This could also be translated as “chosen.” Although Esau was also blessed by God, he wasn't given the privilege of being in the covenant. The term “hated” is used figuratively here to mean “rejected” or “not chosen.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word “love” in the ULB refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
- Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, “devoted, faithful caring” or “care for unselfishly” or “love from God.” Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
- Sometimes the English word “love” describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, “like very much” or “care for” or “have strong affection for.”
- In contexts where the word “love” is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by “strongly prefer” or “like very much” or “greatly desire.”
- Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.

- Many languages must express “love” as an action. So for example, they might translate “love is patient, love is kind” as, “when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him.”

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, **save**, **sin**)

Bible References:

- **1 Corinthians 13:4-7**
- **1 John 03:1-3**
- **1 Thessalonians 04:9-12**
- **Galatians 05:22-24**
- Genesis 29:15-18
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 02:1-3
- **John 03:16-18**
- **Matthew 10:37-39**
- Nehemiah 09:32-34
- **Philippians 01:9-11**
- Song of Solomon 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **27:02** The law expert replied that God’s law says, “**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself.”
- **33:08** “The thorny ground is a person who hears God’s word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God.”
- **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, “This is my Son whom I **love**.”
- **39:10** “Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me.”
- **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
- **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
- **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
- **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
- **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
- **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

Uses:

- [Micah 3:1-3](#)

majesty

Definition:

The term “majesty” refers to greatness and splendor, often in relation to the qualities of a king.

- In the Bible, “majesty” frequently refers to the greatness of God, who is the supreme King over the universe.
- “Your Majesty” is a way of addressing a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “kingly greatness” or “royal splendor.”
- “Your Majesty” could be translated as something like “your Highness” or “your Excellency” or using a natural way of addressing a ruler in the target language.

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 01:16-18](#)
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Isaiah 02:9-11
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- [Micah 05:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1347, H1348, H1420, H1923, H1926, H1935, H7238, G3168, G3172

Uses:

- [Micah 5:4-5](#)

Micah

Facts:

Micah was a prophet of Judah around 700 years before Christ, when the prophet Isaiah was also ministering to Judah. Another man named Micah lived during the time of the judges.

- The book of Micah is near the end of the Old Testament.
- Micah prophesied about the destruction of Samaria by the Assyrians.
- Micah rebuked the people of Judah for disobeying God and warned them that their enemies would attack them.
- His prophecy ends with a message of hope in God, who is faithful and saves his people.
- In the book of Judges, the story is told of a man named Micah living in Ephraim who made an idol out of silver. A young Levite priest who came to live with him stole the idol and other things, and took off with a group of Danites. Eventually the Danites and the priest settled in the city of Laish and they set up that same silver idol to worship.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Assyria](#), Dan, Ephraim, [idol](#), Isaiah, [Judah](#), [judge](#), Levite, [priest](#), [prophet](#), [Samaria](#), silver)

Bible References:

- Jeremiah 26:18-19
- [Micah 01:1](#)
- [Micah 06:1-2](#)

{{tag>publish ktlink}}

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:1](#)
- [Micah 6:1-2](#)

mighty, might

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), [power](#), strength)

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:22-25](#)
- Genesis 06:4
- [Mark 09:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 11:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 3:8](#)

mind

Definition:

The term “mind” refers to the part of a person that thinks and makes decisions.

- The mind of each person is the total of his or her thoughts and reasoning.
- To “have the mind of Christ” means to be thinking and acting as Jesus Christ would think and act. It means being obedient to God the Father, obeying the teachings of Christ, being enabled to do this through the power of the Holy Spirit.
- To “change his mind” means someone made a different decision or had a different opinion than he had previously.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “mind” could also be translated as “thoughts” or “reasoning” or “thinking” or “understanding.”
- The expression “keep in mind” could be translated as “remember” or “pay attention to this” or “be sure to know this.”
- The expression “heart, soul, and mind” could also be translated as “what you feel, what you believe, and what you think about.”
- The expression “call to mind” could be translated as “remember” or “think about.”
- The expression “changed his mind and went” could also be translated as “decided differently and went” or “decided to go after all” or “changed his opinion and went.”

(See also: believe, heart, soul)

Bible References:

- [Luke 10:25-28](#)
- [Mark 06:51-52](#)
- [Matthew 21:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 22:37-38](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

miracle, miracles, wonder, wonders, sign, signs

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: [power](#), [prophet](#), [apostle](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- [Acts 04:15-18](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Daniel 04:1-3](#)
- [Deuteronomy 13:1-3](#)

- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:57-58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059, H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,

Uses:

- Micah 7:14-15

Miriam

Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miriam and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aaron](#), Cush, intercede, [Moses](#), Nile River, Pharaoh, rebel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:1-3
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- Numbers 12:1-3
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

Moab, Moabite, Moabites

Facts:

Moab was the son of Lot's elder daughter. It also became the name of the land where he and his family lived. The term "Moabite" refers to a person who is descended from Moab or who lives in the country of Moab.

- The country of Moab was located east of the Salt Sea.
- Moab was southeast from the town of Bethlehem where Naomi's family lived.
- The people in Bethlehem called Ruth a "Moabites" because she was a woman from the country of Moab. This term could also be translated as "Moabite woman" or "woman from Moab."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Bethlehem](#), Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:36-38
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

mock, ridicule, scoff at, mocker

Definition:

The terms “mock,” “ridicule,” and “scoff at” all refer to making fun of someone, especially in a cruel way.

- Mocking often involves imitating people’s words or actions with the intent to embarrass them or show contempt for them.
- The Roman soldiers mocked or ridiculed Jesus when they put a robe on him and pretended to honor him as king.
- A group of young people ridiculed or scoffed at Elisha when they called him a name, making fun of his bald head.
- The term “scoff at” can also refer to ridiculing an idea that is not considered believable or important.
- A “mocker” is someone who mocks and ridicules consistently.

Bible References:

- [2 Peter 03:3-4](#)
- [Acts 02:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- [Genesis 39:13-15](#)
- [Luke 22:63-65](#)
- [Mark 10:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 20:17-19](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***21:12** Isaiah prophesied that people would spit on, **mock**, and beat the Messiah. ***39:05** The Jewish leaders all answered the high priest, “He deserves to die!” Then they blindfolded Jesus, spit on him, hit him, and **mocked** him. ***39:12** The soldiers whipped Jesus, and put a royal robe and a crown made of thorns on him. Then they **mocked** him by saying, “Look, the King of the Jews!” ***40:04** Jesus was crucified between two robbers. One of them **mocked** Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God?” ***40:05** The Jewish leaders and the other people in the crowd **mocked** Jesus. They said to him, “If you are the Son of God, come down from the cross and save yourself! Then we will believe you.”

\

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:16](#)

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Promised Land](#), [Ten Commandments](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:20-21](#)
- [Acts 07:29-30](#)
- [Exodus 02:9-10](#)
- [Exodus 09:1-4](#)
- [Matthew 17:3-4](#)
- [Romans 05:14-15](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire. ***12:05** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you." ***12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters. ***12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God. ***13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

mourn, mourning

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 01:11-13
- Genesis 23:1-2
- [Luke 07:31-32](#)
- [Matthew 11:16-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:8-10](#)

name, names, named

Definition:

In the Bible, the word “name” was used in several figurative ways.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- [1 John 02:12-14](#)
- [2 Timothy 02:19-21](#)
- [Acts 04:5-7](#)
- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 09:26-27](#)
- [Genesis 12:1-3](#)
- [Genesis 35:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 18:4-6](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

Uses:

- Micah 4:4-5
- Micah 6:9-10

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Canaan, Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6-7
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- [Acts 02:5-7](#)
- [Acts 13:19-20](#)
- [Acts 17:26-27](#)
- [Acts 26:4-5](#)
- Daniel 03:3-5
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29

- Genesis 35:11-13
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:2-5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43-44
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 4:11-12
- Micah 5:8-9
- Micah 5:12-15
- Micah 7:16-17

neighbor

Definition:

The term “neighbor” usually refers to a person who lives nearby. It can also refer more generally to someone who lives in the same community or people group.

- A “neighbor” is someone who would be protected and treated kindly because he is part of the same community.
- In the New Testament parable of the Good Samaritan, Jesus used the term “neighbor” figuratively, expanding its meaning to include all human beings, even someone who is considered an enemy.
- If possible, it is best to translate this term literally with a word or phrase that means “person who lives nearby.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [parable](#), [people group](#), [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Ephesians 04:25-27](#)
- [Galatians 05:13-15](#)
- [James 02:8-9](#)
- [John 09:8-9](#)
- [Luke 01:56-58](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)
- [Matthew 19:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 22:39-40](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 7:5-6](#)

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21-22
- Exodus 29:1-2
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- [Mark 06:12-13](#)
- [Matthew 25:7-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:6-8](#)
- [Micah 6:13-15](#)

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:10-12
- [James 03:11-12](#)
- [Luke 16:5-7](#)
- Psalms 052:8-9

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:13-15](#)

peace, peaceful

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:1-3](#)
- [Acts 07:26-28](#)
- [Colossians 01:18-20](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- [Galatians 05:22-24](#)
- [Luke 07:48-50](#)
- [Luke 12:51-53](#)
- [Mark 04:38-39](#)
- [Matthew 05:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 10:11-13](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.

***15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders. ***16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land. ***21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people. ***48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He

will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever. *50:17 Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 5:4-5

people group, peoples, the people, a people

Definition:

The term “peoples” or “people groups” refers to groups of people who share a common language and culture. The phrase “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- When God set apart “a people” for himself, it means that he chose certain people to belong to him and serve him.
- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, a phrase such as “your people” can mean “your people group” or “your family” or “your relatives.”
- The term “peoples” is often used to refer to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: descendant, **nation**, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:6-7
- Deuteronomy 28:9-10

- Genesis 49:16-18
- Ruth 01:16-18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 1:2-4
- Micah 2:12-13
- Micah 4:1
- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:4-5
- Micah 4:13
- Micah 5:1
- Micah 5:6-7
- Micah 5:8-9

people of God, my people

Definition:

The term “people of God” refers to people whom God has called out from the world to have a special relationship with him.

- When God says “my people” he is talking about the people whom he has chosen and who have a relationship with him.
- God’s people are chosen by him and are set apart from the world to live in a way that is pleasing to him. He also calls them his children.
- In the Old Testament, “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel which was chosen by God and set apart from among the other nations of the world to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, “people of God” especially refers to all those who believe in Jesus and are called the Church. This includes both Jews and Gentiles.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- [Acts 07:33-34](#)
- [Acts 07:51-53](#)
- [Acts 10:36-38](#)
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Isaiah 02:5-6
- Jeremiah 06:20-22
- Joel 03:16-17
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 13:7-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H5971, G2316, G2992

Uses:

- Micah 2:3-5
- Micah 2:9-11
- Micah 3:1-3
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 5:2-3
- Micah 06 General Notes
- Micah 6:1-2
- Micah 6:3-5
- Micah 6:16
- Micah 7:11-13
- Micah 7:14-15

perish, perished, perishing, perishable

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or other disaster. In the Bible, it especially has the meaning of being punished for eternity in hell.

- People who are “perishing” are those who are destined for hell because they have refused to believe in Jesus for their salvation.
- John 3:16 teaches that “perish” means to not live eternally in heaven.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “die eternally” or “be punished in hell” or “be destroyed.”
- Make sure that the translation of “perish” can mean living eternally in hell and does not only mean “cease to exist.”

(See also: death, [everlasting](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 01:22-23](#)
- [2 Corinthians 02:16-17](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 02:8-10](#)
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- Psalms 049:18-20
- [Zechariah 09:5-7](#)
- [Zechariah 13:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

Uses:

- [Micah 7:1-2](#)

pillar, column

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: [foundation](#), [idol](#), [image](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4-5
- Exodus 13:19-22
- Exodus 33:7-9
- Genesis 31:45-47
- Proverbs 09:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 5:12-15](#)

power, powers

Definition:

The term “power” refers to the ability to do things or make things happen, often using great strength. “Powers” refers to people or spirits who have great ability to cause things to happen.

- The “power of God” refers to God’s ability to do everything, especially things that are not possible for people to do.
- God has complete power over everything that he has created.
- God gives his people power to do what he wants, so that when they heal people or do other miracles, they do this by the power of God.
- Because Jesus and the Holy Spirit are also God, they have this same power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “power” could also be translated as “ability” or “strength” or “energy” or “ability to do miracles” or “control.”
- Possible ways to translate the term “powers” could include “powerful beings” or “controlling spirits” or “those who control others.”
- An expression like “save us from the power of our enemies” could be translated as “save us from being oppressed by our enemies” or “rescue us from being controlled by our enemies.” In this case, “power” has the meaning of using one’s strength to control and oppress others.

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), Jesus, [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 01:11-12](#)
- Genesis 31:29-30
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- [Jude 01:24-25](#)
- Judges 02:18-19
- [Luke 01:16-17](#)
- [Luke 04:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 26:62-64](#)
- [Philippians 03:20-21](#)
- Psalm 080:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **22:05** The angel explained, “The Holy Spirit will come to you, and the **power** of God will overshadow you. So the baby will be holy, the Son of God.”

- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the **power** of the Holy Spirit to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **32:15** Immediately Jesus realized that **power** had gone out from him.
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in Jerusalem until my Father gives you **power** when the Holy Spirit comes on you."
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the **power** of God, as you have seen and already know."
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the **power** of Jesus the Messiah."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H410, H1369, H2220, H2428, H2429, H2632, H3027, H3028, H3581, H4475, H4910, H5794, H5797, H5808, H6184, H7786, H7980, H7981, H7983, H7989, H8280, H8592, H8633, G1411, G1415, G1756, G1849, G1850, G2478, G2479, G2904, G3168

Uses:

- **Micah 2:1-2**
- **Micah 3:8**
- **Micah 7:16-17**

priest, priests, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:20-22

- [John 01:19-21](#)
- [Luke 10:31-32](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Mark 02:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 08:4](#)
- [Matthew 12:3-4](#)
- [Micah 03:9-11](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:28-29](#)
- [Nehemiah 10:34-36](#)
- [Revelation 01:4-6](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High" ***13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**. ***19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire. ***21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

Uses:

- [Micah 3:9-11](#)

proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To proclaim is to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: preach)

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:20-22](#)
- [Acts 13:38-39](#)
- [Jonah 03:1-3](#)
- [Luke 04:18-19](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 10:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:9-10](#)

prophet, prophets, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, [divination](#), [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), [vision](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 02:14-16](#)
- [Acts 03:24-26](#)
- [John 01:43-45](#)
- [Malachi 04:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 01:22-23](#)

- [Matthew 02:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 05:17-18](#)
- [Psalm 051:1-2](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God. *

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

Uses:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 2:6-8](#)
- [Micah 2:9-11](#)
- [Micah 3:5-7](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 05 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)

prostitute, harlot, whore

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), sexual immorality, [idol](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:30-31
- Genesis 38:21-23
- [Luke 15:28-30](#)
- [Matthew 21:31-32](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:6-7](#)

punish, punishment

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person’s punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), [repent](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 04:17-18](#)
- [2 Thessalonians 01:9-10](#)
- [Acts 04:21-22](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Genesis 04:13-15](#)
- [Luke 23:15-17](#)
- [Matthew 25:44-46](#)

their

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them. ***16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them. ***19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them. ***48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed. ***48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s **punishment** passes over him. ***49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that

he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever. *49:11 Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 7:3-4](#)

raise, raises, raised, rise, risen, arise, arose

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word “raise” means to “lift up” or “make higher.”

- The figurative phrase “raise up” means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “restore” or “rebuild.”
- “Raise” has a specialized meaning in the phrase “raise from the dead.” It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes “raise up” means to “exalt” someone or something.

rise, arise

To “rise” or “arise” means to “go up” or “get up.” The terms “risen,” “rose,” and “arose” express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as “he arose and went” or “he rose up and went.”
- If something “arises” it means it “happens” or “begins to happen.”
- Jesus predicted that he would “rise from the dead.” Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, “He has risen!”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “raise” or “raise up” could be translated as “lift up” or “make higher.”
- To “raise up” could also be translated as to “cause to appear” or “to appoint” or “to bring into existence.”
- To “raise up the strength of your enemies” could be translated as, “cause your enemies to be very strong.”
- The phrase “raise someone from the dead” could be translated as “cause someone to return from death to life” or “cause someone to come back to life.”
- Depending on the context, “raise up” could also be translated as “provide” or to “appoint” or to “cause to have” or “build up” or “rebuild” or “repair.”
- The phrase “arose and went” could be translated as “got up and went” or “went.”
- Depending on the context, the term “arose” could also be translated as “began” or “started up” or “got up” or “stood up.”

(See also: resurrection, appoint, [exalt](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:40-42

- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 10:39-41
- Colossians 03:1-4
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:1-3
- Judges 02:18-19
- Luke 07:21-23
- Matthew 20:17-19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.
- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891, H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6209, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, H7721

Uses:

- Micah 5:4-5

reap, reaper**Definition:**

The term “reap” means to harvest crops such as grain. A “reaper” is someone who harvests the crop.

- Usually reapers harvested the crops by hand, pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.
- The idea of reaping a harvest is often used figuratively to refer to telling people the good news about Jesus and bringing them into God’s family.
- This term is also used figuratively to refer to the consequences that come from a person’s actions, as in the saying “a man reaps what he plants.” (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Other ways to translate “to reap” and “reaper” could include “to harvest” and “harvester” (or “person who harvests”).

(See also: good news, harvest)

Bible References:

- [Galatians 06:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 06:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 13:29-30](#)
- [Matthew 13:36-39](#)
- [Matthew 25:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:13-15](#)

reign

Definition:

The term “to reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 02:11-13](#)
- [Genesis 36:34-36](#)
- [Luke 01:30-33](#)
- [Luke 19:26-27](#)
- [Matthew 02:22-23](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 4:6-8](#)

rejoice

Definition:

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

(See also: joy)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 05:15-18](#)
- [Acts 16:32-34](#)
- [John 03:29-30](#)
- [Luke 15:6-7](#)
- [Luke 19:37-38](#)
- [Matthew 02:9-10](#)
- [Philippians 04:10-13](#)
- [Romans 05:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 7:7-8](#)

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- Amos 09:11-12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:7-8
- Isaiah 11:10-11
- [Micah 04:6-8](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

Uses:

- [Micah 2:12-13](#)
- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4:6-8](#)

- [Micah 5:6-7](#)
- [Micah 5:8-9](#)
- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 7:18](#)

repent, repents, repented, repentance

Definition:

The terms “repent” and “repentance” refer to turning away from sin and turning back to God.

- To “repent” literally means to “change one’s mind.”
- In the Bible, “repent” usually means to turn away from a sinful, human way of thinking and acting, and to turn to God’s way of thinking and acting.
- When people truly repent of their sins, God forgives them and helps them start obeying him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “repent” can be translated with a word or phrase that means “turn back (to God)” or “turn away from sin and toward God” or “turn toward God, away from sin.”
- Often the term “repentance” can be translated using the verb “repent.” For example, “God has given repentance to Israel” could be translated as “God has enabled Israel to repent.”
- Other ways to translate “repentance” could include “turning away from sin” or “turning to God and away from sin.”

(See also: forgive, [sin](#), turn)

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:19-20](#)
- [Luke 03:3](#)
- [Luke 03:8](#)
- [Luke 05:29-32](#)
- [Luke 24:45-47](#)
- [Mark 01:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 03:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- [Matthew 04:17](#)
- [Romans 02:3-4](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:02** After many years of disobeying God and being oppressed by their enemies, the Israelites **repented** and asked God to rescue them.
- **17:13** David **repented** of his sin and God forgave him.
- **19:18** They (prophets) warned people that God would destroy them if they did not **repent**.
- **24:02** Many people came out to the wilderness to listen to John. He preached to them, saying, “**Repent**, for the kingdom of God is near!”

- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to **receive** forgiveness for their sins. ”
- **44:05** “So now, **repent** and turn to God so that your sins will be washed away.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5150, H5162, H5164, G278, G3338, G3340, G3341

Uses:

- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)

reproach

Definition:

To reproach someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior. A reproach is the negative comment about the person.

- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- “To reproach” could also be translated as “to rebuke” or “to accuse” or “to criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: accuse, rebuke, [shame](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:7-8](#)
- [1 Timothy 06:13-14](#)
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 2:6-8](#)

restore, restores, restored, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original and better condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:8-10
- [Acts 03:21-23](#)
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- [Luke 19:8-10](#)
- [Matthew 12:13-14](#)
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

Uses:

- [Micah 04 General Notes](#)

- **Micah 07 General Notes**

righteous, righteousness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good
- Sometimes “the righteous” was used figuratively and referred to “people who think they are good” or “people who seem to be righteous.”

(See also: [good](#), [holy](#), [evil](#), [just](#), [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:8-10](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 03:13-14](#)
- [Ezekiel 33:12-13](#)
- [Galatians 03:6-9](#)
- [Isaiah 48:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 06:1-2](#)
- [Psalms 037:28-30](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3072, H3477, H4334, H4339, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118

Uses:

- **Introduction to Micah**
- **Micah 6:3-5**

robe**Definition:**

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- [Luke 15:22-24](#)
- [Luke 20:45-47](#)
- [Matthew 27:27-29](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 2:6-8](#)

rod

Definition:

The term “rod” refers to a narrow, solid, stick-like tool that was used in several different ways. It was probably at least a meter in length.

- A wooden rod was used by a shepherd to defend the sheep from other animals. It was also thrown toward a wandering sheep to bring it back to the the flock.
- In Psalm 23, King David used the terms “rod” and “staff” as metaphors to refer to God’s guidance and discipline for his people.
- A shepherd’s rod was also used to count the sheep as they passed under it.
- Another metaphorical expression, “rod of iron,” refers to God’s punishment for people who rebel against him and do evil things.
- In ancient times, measuring rods made of metal, wood, or stone were used to measure the length of a building or object.
- In the Bible, a wooden rod was also referred to as an instrument to discipline children.

(See also: staff, [sheep](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 04:19-21](#)
- [1 Samuel 14:43-44](#)
- [Acts 16:22-24](#)
- [Exodus 27:9-10](#)
- [Revelation 11:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 5:1](#)
- [Micah 6:9-10](#)
- [Micah 7:14-15](#)

ruin, ruins

Definition:

To “ruin” something means to spoil, destroy, or cause to be useless. The term “ruin” or “ruins” refers to the rubble and spoiled remains of something that has been destroyed.

- The prophet Zephaniah spoke about the day of God’s wrath as a “day of ruin” when the world will be judged and punished.
- The book of Proverbs says that ruin and destruction await those who are ungodly.
- Depending on the context, “to ruin” could be translated as “to destroy” or “to spoil” or “to make useless” or “to break.”
- The term “ruin” or “ruins” could be translated as “rubble” or “broken-down buildings” or “destroyed city” or “devastation” or “brokenness” or “destruction,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 12:7-8
- 2 Kings 19:25-26
- [Acts 15:15-18](#)
- Isaiah 23:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:6-7](#)
- [Micah 1:6-7](#)
- [Micah 2:3-5](#)
- [Micah 3:12](#)
- [Micah 6:13-15](#)

ruler, rule

Definition:

The term “ruler” is a general reference to a person who has authority over other people, such as a leader of a country, kingdom, or religious group. A ruler is one who “rules,” and his authority is his “rule.”

- In the Old Testament, a king was sometimes referred to generally as a “ruler,” as in the phrase “appointed him ruler over Israel.”
- God was referred to as the ultimate ruler, who rules over all other rulers.
- In the New Testament, the leader of a synagogue was called a “ruler.”
- Another type of ruler in the New Testament was a “governor.”
- Depending on the context, “ruler” could be translated as “leader” or “person who has authority over.”
- The action “to rule” means to “lead” to “have authority over.” It means the same thing as “reign” when it refers to the ruling of a king.

(See also: authority, governor, [king](#), synagogue)

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:17-18](#)
- [Acts 07:35-37](#)
- [Luke 12:11-12](#)
- [Luke 23:35](#)
- [Mark 10:41-42](#)
- [Matthew 09:32-34](#)
- [Matthew 20:25-28](#)
- [Titus 03:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 3:1-3](#)
- [Micah 3:4](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 5:2-3](#)
- [Micah 7:3-4](#)

salvation

Definition:

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: [save](#), [Savior](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 04:11-12](#)
- [Acts 28:28](#)
- [Ephesians 06:17-18](#)
- [Genesis 49:16-18](#)
- [Luke 02:30-32](#)
- [Philippians 01:28-30](#)
- [Revelation 19:1-2](#)
- [Romans 01:16-17](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H8668, G4991, G4992

Uses:

- [Micah 7:7-8](#)

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), Galilee, Judea, Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:1-3](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [John 04:4-5](#)
- [Luke 09:51-53](#)
- [Luke 10:33-35](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**. ***27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)" ***27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him." ***45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 1:1
- Micah 1:5
- Micah 1:6-7

save, saves, saved, safe

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [salvation](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 01:15-17](#)
- [Acts 02:20-21](#)
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- [Luke 08:36-37](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- Psalm 080:1-3
- [Romans 10:8-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, “Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you.”
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.

- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4422, H4931, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G5198

Uses:

- **Micah 5:8-9**

Savior, savior

Facts:

The term “savior” refers to a person who saves or rescues others from danger. It can also refer to someone who gives strength to others or provides for them.

- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as Israel’s Savior because he often rescued them from their enemies, gave them strength, and provided them with what they needed to live.
- In the New Testament, “Savior” is used as a description or title for Jesus Christ because he saves people from being eternally punished for their sin. He also saves them from being controlled by their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, “Savior” should be translated with a word that is related to the words “save” and “salvation.”
- Ways to translate this term could include “the One who saves” or “God, who saves” or “who delivers from danger” or “who rescues from enemies” or “Jesus, the one who rescues (people) from sin.”

(See also: [deliver](#), [Jesus](#), [salvation](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- [2 Peter 02:20-22](#)
- [Acts 05:29-32](#)
- [Isaiah 60:15-16](#)
- [Luke 01:46-47](#)
- [Psalms 106:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3467, G4990

Uses:

- [Micah 07 General Notes](#)

serpent, snake, viper

Facts:

These terms all refer to a kind of reptile that has a long, thin body and large, fanged jaws, and that moves by slithering back and forth across the ground. The term “serpent” usually refers to a large snake and “viper” refers to a type of snake that has venom which it uses to poison its prey.

- This animal is also used figuratively to refer to a person who is evil, especially someone who is deceitful.
- Jesus called the religious leaders “offspring of vipers” because they pretended to be righteous but deceived people and treated them unfairly.
- In the garden of Eden, Satan took the form of a serpent when he talked to Eve and tempted her to disobey God.
- After the serpent tempted Eve to sin, and both Eve and her husband Adam did sin, God cursed the snake, saying that from then on, all snakes would slither along the ground, implying that before then they had had legs.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: curse, [deceive](#), disobey, Eden, [evil](#), offspring, prey, Satan, [sin](#), tempt)

Bible References:

- Genesis 03:1-3
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Genesis 03:12-13
- [Mark 16:17-18](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Matthew 23:32-33](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 7:16-17](#)

shame, shameful, ashamed

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to a painful feeling of being disgraced a person has because of something dishonorable or improper that he or someone else has done.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something shameful.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their sin so that they feel ashamed of themselves.
- The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- God can bring shame to a person who does not repent by exposing that person’s sin and causing him to be humiliated.

(See also: [false god](#), [humble](#), humiliate, Isaiah, [repent](#), [sin](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Peter 03:15-17](#)
- [2 Kings 02:17-18](#)
- [2 Samuel 13:13-14](#)
- [Luke 20:11-12](#)
- [Mark 08:38](#)
- [Mark 12:4-5](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:11-12](#)
- [Micah 3:5-7](#)
- [Micah 7:10](#)
- [Micah 7:16-17](#)

sheep, ram, ewe

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), lamb, sacrifice, [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:32-33](#)
- [Genesis 30:31-32](#)
- [John 02:13-14](#)
- [Luke 15:3-5](#)
- [Mark 06:33-34](#)
- [Matthew 09:35-36](#)
- [Matthew 10:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 12:11-12](#)
- [Matthew 25:31-33](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- Micah 2:12-13
- Micah 5:8-9
- Micah 6:6-8

shepherd, to shepherd

Definition:

A shepherd is a person who takes care of sheep. The verb “to shepherd” means to protect the sheep and provide them with food and water. Shepherds watch over the sheep, leading them to places with good food and water. Shepherds also keep the sheep from getting lost and protect them from wild animals.

- This term is often used metaphorically in the Bible to refer to taking care of people’s spiritual needs. This includes teaching them what God has told them in the Bible and guiding them in the way they should live.
- In the Old Testament, God was called the “shepherd” of his people because he took care of all their needs and protected them. He also led and guided them. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Moses was a shepherd for the Israelites as he guided them spiritually in their worship of Yahweh and led them physically on their journey to the land of Canaan.
- In the New Testament, Jesus called himself the “good shepherd.” The apostle Paul also referred to him as the “great shepherd” over the Church.
- Also, in the New Testament, the term “shepherd” was used to refer to a person who was a spiritual leader over other believers. The word translated as “pastor” is the same word that is translated as “shepherd.” The elders and overseers were also called shepherds.

Translation Suggestions

- When used literally, the action “shepherd” could be translated as “take care of sheep” or “watch over sheep.”
- The person “shepherd” could be translated as “person who takes care of sheep” or “sheep tender” or “sheep caregiver.”
- When used as a metaphor, different ways to translate this term could include “spiritual shepherd” or “spiritual leader” or “one who is like a shepherd” or “one who cares for his people like a shepherd cares for his sheep” or “one who leads his people like a shepherd guides his sheep” or “one who takes care of God’s sheep.”
- In some contexts, “shepherd” could be translated as “leader” or “guide” or “caregiver.”
- The spiritual expression “to shepherd” could be translated as “to take care of” or “to spiritually nourish” or “to guide and teach” or “to lead and take care of (like a shepherd cares for sheep).”
- In figurative uses, it is best to use or include the literal word for “shepherd” in the translation of this term.

(See also: [believer](#), [Canaan](#), [church](#), [Moses](#), [pastor](#), [sheep](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:24

- Luke 02:8-9
- Mark 06:33-34
- Mark 14:26-27
- Matthew 02:4-6
- Matthew 09:35-36
- Matthew 25:31-33
- Matthew 26:30-32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:11** Moses became a **shepherd** in the wilderness far away from Egypt.
- **17:02** David was a **shepherd** from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's sheep, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the sheep.
- **23:06** That night, there were some **shepherds** in a nearby field guarding their flocks.
- **23:08** The **shepherds** soon arrived at the place where Jesus was and they found him lying in a feeding trough, just as the angel had told them.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like sheep without a **shepherd**.

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 5:4-5
- Micah 5:4-5
- Micah 7:14-15

sin, sins, sinned, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- “To sin” could also be translated as “to disobey God” or “to do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- In expressions like “slaves to sin” or “ruled by sin,” the term “sin” could be translated as “disobedience” or “evil desires and actions.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3

- 1 John 01:8-10
- 1 John 02:1-3
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19-20
- Daniel 09:24-25
- Genesis 04:6-7
- Hebrews 12:1-3
- Isaiah 53:10-11
- Jeremiah 18:21-23
- Leviticus 04:13-15
- Luke 15:17-19
- Matthew 12:31-32
- Romans 06:22-23
- Romans 08:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

Uses:

- [Micah 1:5](#)
- [Micah 1:13-14](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 3:8](#)
- [Micah 6:6-8](#)
- [Micah 6:13-15](#)
- [Micah 7:9](#)
- [Micah 7:18](#)
- [Micah 7:19-20](#)

sow, sower, plant

Definition:

A “plant” is generally something that grows and is attached to the ground. To “sow” means to put seeds in the ground in order to grow plants. A “sower” is a person who sows or plants seeds.

- The method of sowing or planting varies, but one method is to take handfuls of seeds and scatter them on the ground.
- Another method for planting seeds is to make holes in the soil and place seeds in each hole.
- The term “sow” can be used figuratively, as in “a person will reap what he sows.” This means that if a person does something evil, he will receive a negative result, a if a person does good, he will receive a positive result.

Translations Suggestions

- The term to “sow” could also be translated as to “plant.” Make sure the word used to translate this can include planting seeds.
- Other ways to translate “sower” could include “planter” or “farmer” or “person who plants seeds.”
- In English, “sow” is only used for planting seeds, but the English word “plant” can be used for planting seeds as well as larger things, such as trees. Other languages may also use different words, depending on what is being planted.
- The expression “a person reaps what he sows” could also be translated as “just like a certain kind of seed produces a certain kind of plant, in the same way a person’s good actions will bring a good result and a person’s evil actions will bring an evil result.”

(See also: [evil](#), [good](#), [reap](#))

Bible References:

- [Galatians 06:6-8](#)
- [Luke 08:4-6](#)
- [Matthew 06:25-26](#)
- [Matthew 13:3-6](#)
- [Matthew 13:18-19](#)
- [Matthew 25:24-25](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:13-15](#)

spear

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the “javelin” or “lance.”
- Make sure that the translation of “spear” is different from the translation of “sword,” which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, [sword](#), warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:18-19
- Nehemiah 04:12-14
- Psalm 035:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 4:2-3](#)

spirit, spirits, spiritual

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. “Spirit” can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person’s spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, “spiritual food” refers to God’s teachings, which give nourishment to a person’s spirit, and “spiritual wisdom” refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.”
- Examples of “spirit” as an attitude or emotion would include “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The figurative expression “spiritual milk” could also be translated as “basic teachings from God” or “God’s teachings that nourish the spirit (like milk does).”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, [Holy Spirit](#), soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:3-5
- 1 John 04:1-3
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23-24
- Acts 05:9-11
- Colossians 01:9-10
- Ephesians 04:23-24
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:39-41
- Philippians 01:25-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

Uses:

- Micah 2:9-11

stone, stones, stoning

Definition:

A stone is a small rock. To “stone” someone isto throw stones and larger rocks at that person with the intention of killing him. A “stoning” is an event in which someone was stoned.

- In ancient times, stoning was a common method of executing people as punishment for crimes they had committed.
- God commanded the Israelite leaders to stone people for certain sins, such as adultery.
- In the New Testament, Jesus forgave a woman caught in adultery and stopped people from stoning her.
- Stephen, who was the first person in the Bible to be killed for testifying about Jesus, was stoned to death.
- In the city of Lystra, the apostle Paul was stoned, but he did not die from his wounds.

(See also: adultery, commit, crime, death, Lystra, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 07:57-58](#)
- [Acts 07:59-60](#)
- [Acts 14:5-7](#)
- [Acts 14:19-20](#)
- [John 08:4-6](#)
- [Luke 13:34-35](#)
- [Luke 20:5-6](#)
- [Matthew 23:37-39](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:6-7](#)

strong drink

Definition:

The term “strong drink” refers to drinks that have been fermented and have alcohol in them.

- Alcoholic drinks are made from either grain or fruit and have undergone fermentation.
- Kinds of “strong drink” include grape wine, palm wine, beer, and apple cider. In the Bible, grape wine was the most frequently mentioned strong drink.
- Priests and anyone who took a special vow such as the “Nazirite vow” were not permitted to drink fermented drinks.
- This term could also be translated as “fermented drink” or “alcoholic drink.”

(See also: [grape](#), Nazirite, vow, [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Leviticus 10:8-11
- [Luke 01:14-15](#)
- Numbers 06:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 2:9-11](#)

stronghold, fortress, fortified

Definition:

The terms “stronghold” and “fortress” both refer to places that are well protected against an attack by enemy soldiers. The term “fortified” describes a city or other place that has been made safe from attack.

- Often, strongholds and fortresses were manmade structures with defensive walls. They could also have been places with natural protective barriers such as rocky cliffs or high mountains.
- People fortified strongholds by building thick walls or other structures that made it difficult for an enemy to break through.
- “Stronghold” or “fortress” could be translated as “securely strong place” or “strongly protected place.”
- The term “fortified city” could be translated as “securely protected city” or “strongly built city.”
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to God as a stronghold or fortress for those who trust in him. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Another figurative meaning for the term “stronghold” referred to something that someone wrongly trusted in for security, such as a false god or other thing that was worshiped instead of Yahweh. This could be translated as “false strongholds.”
- This term should be translated differently from “refuge,” which emphasizes safety more than the concept of being fortified.

(See also: [false god](#), [idol](#), [refuge](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Corinthians 10:3-4](#)
- [2 Kings 08:10-12](#)
- [2 Samuel 05:8-10](#)
- [Acts 21:34-36](#)
- [Habakkuk 01:10-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 5:4-5](#)
- [Micah 5:10-11](#)

sword

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 12:1-2](#)
- [Genesis 27:39-40](#)
- [Genesis 34:24-26](#)
- [Luke 02:33-35](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 10:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 26:55-56](#)
- [Revelation 01:14-16](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 5:6-7
- Micah 6:13-15

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), tabernacle, courtyard, [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 03:1-3](#)
- [Acts 03:7-8](#)
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- [Luke 19:45-46](#)
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [17:06](#) David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- [18:02](#) In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered

sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.

- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, H7541, G1493, G2411, G3485

Uses:

- **Micah 1:2-4**
- **Micah 3:12**

testimony, testify

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, “to show them what is true” or “to prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, [prophet](#), [witness](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 01:8-11](#)
- [3 John 01:11-12](#)
- [Acts 04:32-33](#)
- [Acts 07:44-46](#)
- [John 03:31-33](#)
- [Mark 01:43-44](#)
- [Matthew 26:59-61](#)
- [Micah 06:3-5](#)
- [Revelation 12:11-12](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1263, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G4303, G4828, G6020

Uses:

- [Micah 6:3-5](#)

thresh, threshing

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

- Threshing the wheat plant loosens the grain from the straw and the chaff. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the grain from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, grain, winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:6-7
- 2 Samuel 24:15-16
- Daniel 02:34-35
- [Luke 03:17](#)
- [Matthew 03:10-12](#)
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 4:11-12](#)
- [Micah 4:13](#)

tongue

Definition:

There are several figurative meanings of “tongue” in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- The expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire.
- In the expression “my tongue rejoices,” the term “tongue” refers to the whole person. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- The phrase “lying tongue” refers to a person’s voice or speech. (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated by “language” or “spiritual language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: [gift](#), [Holy Spirit](#), joy, praise, [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 12:9-11](#)
- [1 John 03:16-18](#)
- 2 Samuel 23:1-2
- [Acts 02:25-26](#)
- Ezekiel 36:1-3
- [Philippians 02:9-11](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:11-12](#)

transgress, transgresses, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgression” refers to the breaking of a command, rule, or moral code. To “transgress” is to commit a “transgression.”

- Figuratively, “to transgress” can also be described as “to cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.
- The terms “transgression,” “sin,” “iniquity,” and “trespass” all include the meaning of acting against God’s will and disobeying his commands.

Translation Suggestions:

- “To transgress” could be translated as “to sin” or “to disobey” or “to rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: [sin](#), [trespass](#), [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 04:3-6](#)
- Daniel 09:24-25
- [Galatians 03:19-20](#)
- [Galatians 06:1-2](#)
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 032:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G458, G459, G3845, G3847, G3848, G3928

Uses:

- [Micah 1:13-14](#)
- [Micah 3:8](#)
- [Micah 6:6-8](#)
- [Micah 7:18](#)

true, truth, truths

Definition:

The term “truth” refers to one or more concepts that are facts, events that actually happened, and statements that were actually said. Such concepts are said to be “true.”

- True things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- The truth is an understanding, belief, fact, or statement that is true.
- To say that a prophecy “came true” or “will come true” mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- Truth includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God’s truth in the words that he spoke.
- God’s word is truth. It tells about things that actually happened and teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term “true” could also be translated by “real” or “factual” or “correct” or “right” or “certain” or “genuine.”
- Ways to translate the term “truth” could include “what is true” or “fact” or “certainty” or “principle.”
- The expression “come true” could also be translated as “actually happen” or “be fulfilled” or “happen as predicted.”
- The expression “tell the truth” or “speak the truth” could also be translated as “say what is true” or “tell what really happened” or “say things that are reliable.”
- To “accept the truth” could be translated as “believe what is true about God.”
- In an expression such as “worship God in spirit and in truth,” the expression “in truth” could also be translated by “faithfully obeying what God has taught us.”

(See also: believe, [faithful](#), fulfill, obey, [prophet](#), understand)

Bible References:

- [1 Corinthians 05:6-8](#)
- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 John 02:7-8](#)
- [3 John 01:5-8](#)
- [Acts 26:24-26](#)
- [Colossians 01:4-6](#)
- [Genesis 47:29-31](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [James 03:13-14](#)
- [James 05:19-20](#)

- Jeremiah 04:1-3
- John 01:9
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:49-51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:8-10
- Matthew 12:15-17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

***02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true!** You will not die." ***14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is **true** that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!" ***16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the **true** God. ***31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God." ***39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth?**"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

Uses:

- Micah 7:19-20

trust, trusts, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- [1 Timothy 04:9-10](#)
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:12-14
- Psalm 031:5-7
- [Titus 03:8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- [12:12](#) When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- [14:15](#) Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [17:02](#) David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- [34:06](#) Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

Uses:

- [Micah 7:5-6](#)

unclean

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: clean, [defile](#), demon, [holy](#), sacrifice, unholy)

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 04:7-8](#)
- [Acts 08:6-8](#)
- [Acts 10:27-29](#)
- [Colossians 03:5-8](#)
- [Genesis 07:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 23:27-28](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2930, H2931, H2932, H5079, H6172, H6945, H7137, G167, G169, G2839, G2840, G3394

Uses:

- [Micah 2:9-11](#)

unjust, unjustly, injustice

Definition:

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair, and often, harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as, “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))

(See also: [just](#), unrighteous)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- [Hebrews 06:9-10](#)
- [Luke 18:6-8](#)
- [Matthew 05:43-45](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H2555, H5765, H5766, H5767, H8636, G91, G93, G94

Uses:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 03 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4:13](#)

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9-11
- Genesis 49:11-12
- [John 15:1-2](#)
- [Luke 22:17-18](#)
- [Mark 12:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 21:35-37](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 4:4-5](#)

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- [Luke 13:6-7](#)
- [Luke 20:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 20:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 21:40-41](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:6-7](#)
- [Micah 7:1-2](#)

vision

Facts:

The term “vision” refers to something that a person sees. It especially refers to something unusual or supernatural that God shows people in order to give them a message.

- Usually, visions are seen while the person is awake. However, sometimes a vision is something a person sees in a dream while asleep.
- God sends visions to tell people something that is very important. For example, Peter was shown a vision to tell him that God wanted him to welcome Gentiles.

Translation Suggestion

- The phrase “saw a vision” could be translated as “saw something unusual from God” or “God showed him something special.”
- Some languages may not have separate words for “vision” and “dream.” So a sentence such as “Daniel had dreams and visions in his mind” could be translated as something like “Daniel was dreaming while asleep and God caused him to see unusual things.”

(See also: dream)

Bible References:

- [Acts 09:10-12](#)
- [Acts 10:3-6](#)
- [Acts 10:9-12](#)
- [Acts 12:9-10](#)
- [Luke 01:21-23](#)
- [Luke 24:22-24](#)
- [Matthew 17:9-10](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 3:5-7](#)

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” is often used figuratively to refer to speaking or communicating something.

- God is said to use his voice, even though he doesn’t have a voice in the same way a human being does.
- This term can be used to refer to the whole person, as in the statement “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert...” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- To “hear someone’s voice” could also be translated as “hear someone speaking.”
- Sometimes the word “voice” may be used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the “voice” of the heavens proclaims God’s mighty works. This could also be translated as “their splendor shows clearly how great God is.”

(See also: call, [proclaim](#), splendor)

Bible References:

- [John 05:36-38](#)
- [Luke 01:42-45](#)
- [Luke 09:34-36](#)
- [Matthew 03:16-17](#)
- [Matthew 12:19-21](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 6:1-2](#)
- [Micah 6:9-10](#)

walk, walks, walked, walking

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: [Holy Spirit](#), honor)

Bible References:

- [1 John 01:5-7](#)
- [1 Kings 02:1-4](#)
- [Colossians 02:6-7](#)
- [Galatians 05:25-26](#)
- [Genesis 17:1-2](#)
- [Isaiah 02:5-6](#)
- [Jeremiah 13:8-11](#)
- [Micah 04:2-3](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1979, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, H4109, G1330, G1704, G3716, G4043, G4198, G4748

Uses:

- Micah 2:3-5
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:4-5
- Micah 6:6-8
- Micah 6:16

watchtower, tower

Definition:

The term “watchtower” refers to a tall structure built as a place from which guards could look out for any danger. These towers were often made of stone.

- Landowners sometimes built watchtowers from which they could guard their crops and protect them from being stolen.
- The towers often included rooms where the watchmen or family lived, so that they could guard the crops day and night.
- Watchtowers for cities were built higher than the city walls so that watchmen could see if any enemies were coming to attack the city.
- The term “watchtower” is also used as a symbol of protection from enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [adversary](#), watch)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:25-27
- Ezekiel 26:3-4
- [Mark 12:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 21:33-34](#)
- Psalm 062:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 4:6-8](#)

water, waters

Definition:

In addition to its primary meaning, “water” also often refers to a body of water, such as an ocean, sea, lake, or river.

- The term “waters” refers to bodies of water or many sources of water. It can also be a general reference for a large amount of water.
- A figurative use of “waters” refers to great distress, difficulties, and suffering. For example, God promises that when we “go through the waters” he will be with us.
- The phrase “many waters” emphasizes how great the difficulties are.
- To “water” livestock and other animals means to “provide water for” them. In Bible times, this usually involved drawing water from a well with a bucket and pouring the water into a trough or other container for the animals to drink from.
- In the Old Testament, God is referred to as the spring or fountain of “living waters” for his people. This means he is the source of spiritual power and refreshment.
- In the New Testament, Jesus used the phrase “living water” to refer to the Holy Spirit working in a person to transform and bring new life.

Translation Suggestions:

- The phrase, “draw water” could be translated as “pull water up from a well with a bucket.”
- “Streams of living water will flow from them” could be translated as “the power and blessings from the Holy Spirit will flow out of them them like streams of water.” Instead of “blessings” the term “gifts” or “fruits” or “godly character” could be used.
- When Jesus is talking to the Samaritan woman at the well, the phrase “living water” could be translated as “water that gives life” or “lifegiving water.” In this context, the imagery of water must be kept in the translation.
- Depending on the context, the term “waters” or “many waters” could be translated as “great suffering (that surrounds you like water)” or “overwhelming difficulties (like a flood of water)” or “large amounts of water.”

(See also: [life](#), [spirit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 08:36-38](#)
- [Exodus 14:21-22](#)
- [John 04:9-10](#)
- [John 04:13-14](#)
- [John 04:15-16](#)
- [Matthew 14:28-30](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:2-4](#)

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

Bible References:

- [1 Timothy 05:23-25](#)
- [Genesis 09:20-21](#)
- [Genesis 49:11-12](#)
- [John 02:3-5](#)
- [John 02:9-10](#)
- [Matthew 09:17](#)
- [Matthew 11:18-19](#)

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's:

Uses:

- [Micah 2:9-11](#)

- Micah 6:13-15

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- In the Bible, the term “worldly wisdom” is a figurative way of referring to what people in this world think is wise, but which is actually foolish.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Colossians 03:15-17](#)
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Genesis 03:4-6
- Isaiah 19:11-12
- Jeremiah 18:18-20
- [Matthew 07:24-25](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

Uses:

- [Micah 6:9-10](#)

witness, witnesses, eyewitness, eyewitnesses

Definition:

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- “To witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- “To witness to” could be translated as “to tell what was seen” or “to testify” or “to state what happened.”
- “To witness” something could be translated as “to see something” or “to experience something happen.”

(See also: [guilt](#), [judge](#), [true](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 05:6-8](#)
- [1 Thessalonians 02:10-12](#)
- [1 Timothy 05:19-20](#)
- [2 Peter 01:16-18](#)
- [Acts 13:30-31](#)
- [Deuteronomy 31:27-29](#)
- [John 01:6-8](#)
- [Romans 01:8-10](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, G267, G1263, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3144, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577

Uses:

- [Micah 1:2-4](#)
- [Micah 06 General Notes](#)

woe**Definition:**

The term “woe” refers to a feeling of great distress. It also gives a warning that someone will experience severe trouble.

- The expression “woe to” is followed by a warning to people that they will experience suffering as punishment for their sins.
- In several places in the Bible, the word “woe” is repeated, to emphasize an especially terrible judgment.
- A person who says “woe is me” or “woe to me” is expressing sorrow about severe suffering.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “woe” could also be translated as “great sorrow” or “sadness” or “calamity” or “disaster.”
- Other ways to translate the expression “Woe to (name of city)” could include, “How terrible it will be for (name of city)” or “The people in (that city) will be severely punished” or “Those people will suffer greatly.”
- The expression, “Woe is me!” or “Woe to me!” could be translated as “How sad I am!” or “I am so sad!” or “How terrible this is for me!”
- The expression “Woe to you” could also be translated as “You will suffer terribly” or “You will experience terrible troubles.”

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 13:17-18
- [Habakkuk 02:12-14](#)
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Jeremiah 45:1-3
- [Jude 01:9-11](#)
- [Luke 06:24-25](#)
- [Luke 17:1-2](#)
- [Matthew 23:23-24](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H188, H190, H337, H480, H1929, H1945, H1958, G3759

Uses:

- [Micah 2:1-2](#)

- Micah 7:1-2

word of God, words of God, word of Yahweh, word of the Lord, scripture, scriptures

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “word of God” refers to anything that God has communicated to people. This includes spoken and written messages. Jesus is also called “the Word of God.”

- The term “scriptures” means “writings.” It is only used in the New Testament and refers to the Hebrew scriptures, which is the Old Testament. These writings were God’s message that he had told people to write down so that many years in the future people could still read it.
- The related terms “word of Yahweh” and “word of the Lord” often refer to a specific message from God that was given to a prophet or other person in the Bible.
- Sometimes this term occurs as simply “the word” or “my word” or “your word” (when talking about God’s word).
- In the New Testament, Jesus is called “the Word” and “the Word of God.” These titles mean that Jesus fully reveals who God is, because he is God himself.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “the message of Yahweh” or “God’s message” or “the teachings from God.”
- It may be more natural in some languages to make this term plural and say “God’s words” or “the words of Yahweh.”
- The expression “the word of Yahweh came” is often used to introduce something that God told his prophets or his people. This could be translated as “Yahweh spoke this message” or “Yahweh spoke these words.”
- The term “scripture” or “scriptures” could be translated as “the writings” or “the written message from God.” This term should be translated differently from the translation of the term “word.”
- When “word” occurs alone and it refers to God’s word, it could be translated as “the message” or “God’s word” or “the teachings.” Also consider the alternate translations suggested above.
- When the Bible refers to Jesus as “the Word,” this term could be translated as “the Message” or “the Truth.”

(See also: [prophet](#), [word](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Kings 13:1-3](#)
- [2 Timothy 03:16-17](#)
- [Acts 06:2-4](#)
- [Acts 12:24-25](#)

- Genesis 15:1-3
- James 02:8-9
- Jeremiah 36:1-3
- John 05:39-40
- Luke 08:11-13
- Romans 01:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:07** In **God's word** he commands his people, 'Worship only the Lord your God and only serve him.'
- **33:06** So Jesus explained, 'The seed is the **word of God**.'
- **42:03** Then Jesus explained to them what **God's word** says about the Messiah.
- **42:07** Jesus said, 'I told you that everything written about me in **God's word** must be fulfilled.' Then he opened their minds so they could understand **God's word**.
- **45:10** Philip also used other **scriptures** to tell him the good news of Jesus.
- **48:12** But Jesus is the greatest prophet of all. He is the **Word of God**.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his **word**, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H565, H1697, H3068, G3056, G4487

Uses:

- Micah 1:1

word, words

Definition:

A “word” refers to something that someone has said.

- An example of this would be when the angel told Zechariah, “You did not believe my words,” which means, “You did not believe what I said.”
- This term almost always refers to an entire message, not just one word.
- Sometimes “word” refers to speech in general, such as “powerful in word and deed” which means “powerful in speech and behavior.”
- Often in the Bible “the word” refers to everything God has said or commanded, as in “the word of God” or “the word of truth.”
- A very special use of this term is when Jesus is called “the Word.” For these last two meanings, see [word of God](#)

Translation Suggestions:

- Different ways of translating “word” or “words” include “teaching” or “message” or “news” or “a saying” or “what was said.”

(See also: [word of God](#))

Bible References:

- [2 Timothy 04:1-2](#)
- [Acts 08:4-5](#)
- [Colossians 04:2-4](#)
- [James 01:17-18](#)
- [Jeremiah 27:1-4](#)
- [John 01:1-3](#)
- [John 01:14-15](#)
- [Luke 08:14-15](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)
- [Matthew 07:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H562, H565, H1697, H1703, H3983, H4405, H4406, H6310, H6600, G518, G1024, G3050, G3054, G3055, G3056, G4086, G4487, G4935, G5023, G5542

Uses:

- [Micah 2:6-8](#)
- [Micah 4:2-3](#)

works, deeds, work, acts

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “works,” “deeds,” and “acts” are used to refer generally to things that God or people do.

- The term “work” refers to doing labor or anything that is done to serve other people.
- God’s “works” and the “work of his hands” are expressions that refer to all the things he does or has done, including creating the world, saving sinners, providing for the needs of all creation and keeping the entire universe in place. The terms “deeds” and “acts” are also used to refer to God’s miracles in expressions such as “mighty acts” or “marvelous deeds.”
- The works or deeds that a person does can be either good or evil.
- The Holy Spirit empowers believers to do good works, which are also called “good fruit.”
- People are not saved by their good works; they are saved through faith in Jesus.
- A person’s “work” can be what he does to earn a living or to serve God. The Bible also refers to God as “working.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “works” or “deeds” could be “actions” or “things that are done.”
- When referring to God’s “works” or “deeds” and the “work of his hands,” these expressions could also be translated as “miracles” or “mighty acts” or “amazing things he does.”
- The expression “the work of God” could be translated as “the things that God is doing” or “the miracles God does” or “the amazing things that God does” or “everything God has accomplished.”
- The term “work” can just be the singular of “works” as in “every good work” or “every good deed.”
- The term “work” can also have the broader meaning of “service” or “ministry.” For example, the expression “your work in the Lord” could also be translated as, “what you do for the Lord.”
- The expression “examine your own work” could also be translated as “make sure what you are doing is God’s will” or “make sure that what you are doing pleases God.”
- The expression “the work of the Holy Spirit” could be translated as “the empowering of the Holy Spirit” or “the ministry of the Holy Spirit” or “the things that the Holy Spirit does.”

(See also: [fruit](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [miracle](#))

Bible References:

- [1 John 03:11-12](#)
- [Acts 02:8-11](#)
- Daniel 04:36-37
- Exodus 34:10-11

- Galatians 02:15-16
- James 02:14-17
- Matthew 16:27-28
- Micah 02:6-8
- Romans 03:27-28
- Titus 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4566, H4567, H4611, H4659, H5949, G2041

Uses:

- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 3:4
- Micah 6:16

worship

Definition:

“To worship” means to honor, praise and obey someone, especially God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- Some people worshiped false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- [Colossians 02:18-19](#)
- Deuteronomy 29:17-19
- Exodus 03:11-12
- [Luke 04:5-7](#)
- [Matthew 02:1-3](#)
- [Matthew 02:7-8](#)

Examples from the Bible stories:

***13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.” ***14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things. ***17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices. ***18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols. ***25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’” ***26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**. ***47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God. ***49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

Uses:

- Micah 5:12-15

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. It especially refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.

- In the Bible, "wrath" usually refers to God's anger toward those who sin against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage. God's wrath is just and holy.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- [1 Thessalonians 01:8-10](#)
- [1 Timothy 02:8-10](#)
- [Luke 03:7](#)
- [Luke 21:23-24](#)
- [Matthew 03:7-9](#)
- [Revelation 14:9-10](#)
- [Romans 01:18-19](#)
- [Romans 05:8-9](#)

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2534, H2740, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

Uses:

- [Micah 5:12-15](#)

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name that he revealed when he spoke to Moses at the burning bush.

- The name “Yahweh” comes from the word that means, “to be” or “to exist.”
- Possible meanings of “Yahweh” include, “he is” or “I am” or “the one who causes to be.”
- This name reveals that God has always lived and will continue to live forever. It also means that he is always present.
- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULB and UDB texts always translates this term as, “Yahweh,” as it literally occurs in the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” does not ever occur in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even in quotes from the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.
- By adding the pronoun “I” or “me,” the ULB indicates to the reader that God is the speaker.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:19-20
- 1 Samuel 16:6-7
- Daniel 09:3-4
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:4-6
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:12-13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:3-4
- Isaiah 38:7-8
- Job 12:9-10
- Joshua 01:8-9
- Lamentations 01:4-5
- Leviticus 25:35-38
- Malachi 03:4-5
- Micah 02:3-5
- Micah 06:3-5
- Numbers 08:9-11
- Psalm 124:1-3
- Ruth 01:19-21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

Uses:

- Micah 1:1

- Micah 1:2-4
- Micah 1:11-12
- Micah 2:3-5
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 2:12-13
- Micah 3:4
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 3:9-11
- Micah 4:1
- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 4:9-10
- Micah 4:11-12
- Micah 4:13
- Micah 5:4-5
- Micah 5:6-7
- Micah 5:10-11
- Micah 6:1-2
- Micah 6:1-2
- Micah 6:3-5
- Micah 6:6-8
- Micah 6:9-10
- Micah 7:7-8
- Micah 7:9
- Micah 7:10
- Micah 7:16-17

Yahweh of hosts, God of hosts, host of, Lord of hosts

Definition:

The terms “Yahweh of hosts” and “God of hosts” are titles that express God’s authority over the thousands of angels who obey him.

- The term “host” or “hosts” is a word that refers to a large number of something, such as an army of people or the massive number of stars. It can also refer to all the many spirit beings, including evil spirits. The context makes it clear what is being referred to.
- Phrases similar to “host of the heavens” refer to all the stars, planets and other heavenly bodies.
- In the New Testament, the phrase, “Lord of hosts” means the same as “Yahweh of hosts” but it cannot be translated that way since the Hebrew word “Yahweh” is not used in the New Testament.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “Yahweh of hosts” could include, “Yahweh, who rules all the angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler over armies of angels” or “Yahweh, the ruler of all creation.”
- The phrase “of hosts” in the terms “God of hosts” and “Lord of hosts” would be translated the same way as in the phrase “Yahweh of hosts” above.
- Certain churches do not accept the literal term “Yahweh” and prefer to use the capitalized word, “LORD” instead, following the tradition of many Bible versions. For these churches, a translation of the term “LORD of hosts” would be used in the Old Testament for “Yahweh of hosts.”

(See also: angel, authority, [God](#), lord, [Lord](#), [Lord Yahweh Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- [Zechariah 13:1-2](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H430, H3068, H6635

Uses:

- [Micah 4:4-5](#)

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), [Bethlehem](#), [Jebusites](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:4-6
- Amos 01:1-2
- Jeremiah 51:34-35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- [Romans 11:26-27](#)

Word Data:

- Strong’s:

Uses:

- [Micah 1:13-14](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 4:2-3](#)
- [Micah 4:6-8](#)
- [Micah 4:9-10](#)
- [Micah 4:11-12](#)

translationAcademy

Abstract Nouns

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even to relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, injury, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it. For example, "What is its weight?" could be expressed as "How much does it weigh?" or "How heavy is it?"

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, and weight.

Using abstract nouns allows people to express thoughts about ideas in fewer words than if they did not have those nouns. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people can talk about them as though they were things. It is like a short-cut in language. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But if the language did not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," then they would have to make a longer sentence to express the same meaning. They would have to say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun.

Examples from the Bible

...from childhood you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But godliness with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)

The abstract nouns “godliness” and “contentment” refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun “gain” refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “salvation” here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

The abstract noun “slowness” refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun..

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.
 - **... from childhood you have known the sacred writings ...** (2 Timothy 3:15 ULB)
 - Ever since you were a child you have known the sacred writings.
 - **But godliness with contentment is great gain.** (1 Timothy 6:6 ULB)
 - But being godly and content is very beneficial.
 - But we benefit greatly when we are godly and content.
 - But we benefit greatly when we honor and obey God and when we are happy with what we have.
 - **Today salvation has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham.** (Luke 19:9 ULB)
 - Today the people in this house have been saved...
 - Today God has saved the people in this house...
 - **The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness to be.** (2 Peter 3:9 ULB)

- The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider moving slowly to be.
- **He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes of the heart.** (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULB)
 - He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Uses:

- Micah 1:11-12
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 3:8
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 4:13
- Micah 5:12-15
- Micah 6:6-8
- Micah 7:3-4
- Micah 7:7-8
- Micah 7:18
- Micah 7:19-20

Active or Passive

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

Some languages have both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not have passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** My father built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** The house was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages have active forms. Some languages have passive forms, and some do not. The passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that have it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.

- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants were killed, and your servant Uriah the Hittite was killed too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULB)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal was broken down ... (Judges 6:28 ULB)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULB)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)

- The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- **It would be better for him if a millstone were put around his neck and he were thrown into the sea.** (Luke 17:2 ULB)
 - It would be better for him if they were to put a millstone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
 - It would be better for him if someone were to put a heavy stone around his neck and throw him into the sea.
3. Use a different verb in an active sentence.
- **A loaf of bread was given him every day from the street of the bakers.** (Jeremiah 37:21 ULB)
 - He received a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Uses:

- Micah 1:6-7
- Micah 1:6-7
- Micah 1:11-12
- Micah 1:13-14
- Micah 2:9-11
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 4:1
- Micah 4:1
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 4:9-10
- Micah 4:11-12
- Micah 6:16
- Micah 7:3-4
- Micah 7:10
- Micah 7:11-13

Apostrophe

This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULB)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.' " (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option.

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells them his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him.
 - **He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: "Altar, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, ... on you they will burn human bones.' "** (1 Kings 13:2 ULB)
 - He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says about this altar. 'See, ... they will burn people's bones on it.' "
 - **Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you** (2 Samuel 1:21 ULB)
 - As for these mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on them

Uses:

- Micah 1:2-4
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 5:2-3
- Micah 6:1-2
- Micah 6:16

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker gives the audience information in two ways:
- **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
- **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly is **implicit information**.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, you can include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULB)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here “I am the Son of Man” but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULB)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that because the people he was speaking to did not repent, they would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULB)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
 - **Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:20 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes to live in, and the birds of the sky have nests to live in, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."
 - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked, at the day of judgment than for you
 - ◇ Or:
 - ... it will be more tolerable for those wicked cities Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you
 - **Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands when they eat.** (Matthew 15:2 ULB) - Assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.
 - Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness when they eat.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.
 - **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULB) - Implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.
 - Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live."
 - **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULB) - Implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.
 - At the day of judgment, God will punish Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked, less severely than he will punish you

- At the day of judgment, God will punish you more severely than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.### Uses:

- [Introduction to Micah](#)
- [Micah 1:6-7](#)
- [Micah 02 General Notes](#)
- [Micah 4:4-5](#)
- [Micah 5:10-11](#)
- [Micah 6:3-5](#)
- [Micah 7:11-13](#)
- [Micah 7:11-13](#)
- [Micah 7:14-15](#)

Doublet

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or very short phrases that mean the same thing or very close to the same thing and that are used together. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Often they are used to emphasize or intensify the idea expressed by the two words.

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. In either case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was old and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

... he attacked two men more righteous and better than himself ... (1 Kings 2:32 ULB)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULB)

This means that they had prepared “many false things to say.”

... as of a lamb without blemish and without spot. (1 Peter 1:19 ULB)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any blemish—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using one. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate only one of the words.
 - **You have decided to prepare false and deceptive words** (Daniel 2:9 ULB)
 - "You have decided to prepare false things to say."
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
 - **King David was old and advanced in years.** (1 Kings 1:1 ULB)
 - "King David was very old."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.
 - **... a lamb without blemish and without spot...** (1 Peter 1:19 ULB) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."
 - " ... a lamb without any blemish at all ..."

Uses:

- Micah 5:2-3
- Micah 5:8-9

Ellipsis

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves one or more words out of a sentence because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and fill in the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. The information that is omitted has usually already been stated in a preceding sentence or phrase.

... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

This is ellipsis because “sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know what the missing information is if they do not use ellipsis in their language.

Examples from the Bible

... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.” (Luke 18:40-41 ULB)

The man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him.

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox. (Psalm 29:6 ULB)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. He did not say that Yahweh makes Sirion skip like a young ox because he knew that his readers could fill in the information themselves.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

- **... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.** (Psalm 1:5)
 - ... the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and sinners will not stand in the assembly of the righteous
- **... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, that I might receive my sight.”** (Luke 18:40-41)
 - ... when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, I want you to heal me that I might receive my sight.”
- **He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6)
 - He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and he makes Sirion skip like a young ox.

Uses:

- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 5:6-7
- Micah 7:1-2
- Micah 7:5-6

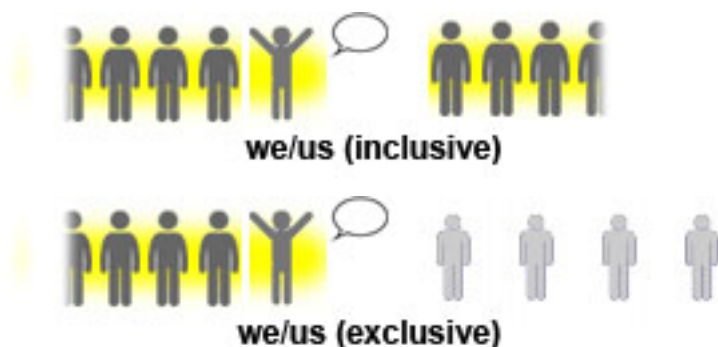
Exclusive and Inclusive “We”

This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive “we”?*

Description

Some languages have more than one form of “we:” an **inclusive** form that means “I and you” and an **exclusive** form that means “I and someone else but not you.” The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for “us,” “our,” “ours,” and “ourselves.” Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive “we” and the exclusive “we” refer to.



Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for “we.” Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of “we” will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form of “we” to use.

Examples from the Bible

They said, “We have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless we went and bought food for all this crowd of people.” (Luke 9:13 ULB)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this “we” could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that “we” would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

we have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to us (1 John 1:2 ULB)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of “we” and “us” would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

... the shepherds said one to each other, ”Let us now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to us.” (Luke 2:15 ULB)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said “us,” they were including the people they were speaking to - one another.

Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, ”Let us go over to the other side of the lake.” Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULB)

When Jesus said “us,” he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

Uses:

- [Micah 7:19-20](#)

First, Second, or Third Person

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker referred to himself or to the person he was speaking to with a phrase other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker used the third person to refer to himself or to the people he was speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULB)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
”... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULB)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULB)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
 - **But David said to Saul, ”Your servant used to keep his father’s sheep.”** (1 Samuel 17:34)
 - But David said to Saul, ”I, your servant, used to keep my father’s sheep.”
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.
 - **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, ”... Do you have an arm like God’s? Can you thunder with a voice like him?** (Job 40:6, 9 ULB)
 - Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, ”... Do you have an arm like mine? Can you thunder with a voice like me?”
 - **So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive his brother from your heart.** (Matthew 18:35 ULB)
 - So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you does not forgive your brother from your heart.

Uses:

- Micah 6:3-5
- Micah 7:18

Forms of You

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” - Formal or Informal

Uses:

- [Micah 2:6-8](#)
- [Micah 2:9-11](#)
- [Micah 2:9-11](#)
- [Micah 2:12-13](#)
- [Micah 4:2-3](#)
- [Micah 4:13](#)
- [Micah 5:8-9](#)
- [Micah 5:10-11](#)
- [Micah 5:12-15](#)
- [Micah 6:1-2](#)
- [Micah 6:3-5](#)
- [Micah 7:3-4](#)
- [Micah 7:7-8](#)

- Micah 7:11-13
- Micah 7:19-20

How to Translate Names

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this Melchizedek, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULB)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULB)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULB)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

She named him Moses and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULB)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULB)

It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULB)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

- **You went over the Jordan and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULB)
 - You went over the Jordan River and came to the city of Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the tribe of the Amorites
 - **Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you."** (Luke 13:31 ULB)
 - Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because King Herod wants to kill you."
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- **She named him Moses and said, "Because I drew him from the water."** (Exodus 2:11 ULB)
 - She named him Moses, which sounds like 'drawn out,' and said, "Because I drew him from the water."
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- **... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi;** (Genesis 16:13-14 ULB)
 - ... she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called Well of the Living One who sees me;
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.
- **... a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - ... a young man named Paul¹ The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.
 - **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
5. Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."
- **a young man named Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULB)
 - a young man named Saul The footnote would look like:

- ◇ ^[1]This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.
- **But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;** (Acts 13:9)
 - But Saul, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit;
- **It came about in Iconium that Paul and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue** (Acts 14:1 ULB)
 - It came about in Iconium that Paul¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue The footnote would look like:
 - ◇ ^[1]This is the man that was called Saul before Acts 13.

Uses:

- Introduction to Micah
- Micah 1:1
- Micah 1:8-10
- Micah 1:11-12
- Micah 1:13-14
- Micah 1:13-14
- Micah 1:15-16
- Micah 1:15-16
- Micah 5:2-3
- Micah 5:6-7
- Micah 6:3-5
- Micah 6:16

Hyperbole and Generalization

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations?*

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something he means as completely true, as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement.

- It rains here every night.
- The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
- The speaker means this as a generalization if he means that it rains here most nights.
- The speaker means this as a hyperbole if he wants to say it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave one stone upon another (Luke 19:44 ULB)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame, but honor will come to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles may have done this.

Even though a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” it does not necessarily mean **exactly** “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never.” It simply means “most,” “most of the time,” “hardly any” or “rarely.”

Moses was educated in all the learning of the Egyptians (Acts 7:22 ULB)

- This generalization means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught.

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is completely true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not completely true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Exaggeration

If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULB)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should do whatever extreme things we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration. It means that there were many, many soldiers in the Philistine army.

Examples of Generalization

They found him, and they said to him, "Everyone is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULB)

The disciples told Jesus that everyone was looking looking for him. They probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for him, but that many people were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him.

But as his anointing teaches you about all things and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULB)

This is a generalization. God's Spirit teaches us about all things that we need to know, not about everything that is possible to know.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

... they saw Jesus walking on the sea and coming near the boat ... (John 6:19 ULB)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”

Yahweh is righteous in all his ways and gracious in all he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULB)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the exaggeration or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
 - **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore.** (1 Samuel 13:5 ULB)
 - The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and a great number of troops.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
 - **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame ...** (Proverbs 13:18 ULB)
 - In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame
 - **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
 - “And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles generally do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”
3. For a generalization, add a word like “most” or “almost” to show that the generalization is not exact.
 - **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)

- Almost all the country of Judea and almost all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
 - Most of the country of Judea and most of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
4. For a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.
- **The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him.** (Mark 1:5 ULB)
 - The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

Uses:

- [Micah 7:1-2](#)
- [Micah 7:16-17](#)

Idiom

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg (This means, “You are telling me a lie”)
- Do not push the envelope (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme”)
- This house is under water (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value”)
- We are painting the town red (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely”)

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULB)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof. (Luke 7:6 ULB)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Let these words go deeply into your ears. (Luke 9:44 ULB)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

the children of Israel went out with a high hand. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who lifts up my head (Psalm 3:3 ULB)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
 - **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."** (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULB)
 - ...Look, we all belong to the same nation.
 - **he resolutely set his face to go to Jerusalem.** (Luke 9:51 ULB)
 - He started to travel to Jerusalem, determined to reach it.
 - **I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof.** (Luke 7:6 ULB)
 - I am not worthy that you should enter my house.
2. Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.
 - **Let these words go deeply into your ears** (Luke 9:44 ULB)
 - Be all ears when I say these words to you.
 - **"My eyes grow dim from grief** (Psalm 6:7 ULB)
 - I am crying my eyes out

Uses:

- [Micah 1:1](#)
- [Micah 1:11-12](#)

- Micah 1:13-14
- Micah 5:4-5
- Micah 7:11-13
- Micah 7:16-17

Irony

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULB)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULB)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
 Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
 Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
 "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULB)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is not found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)
 - You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
 - You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!
- **I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.** (Luke 5:32 ULB)
 - I did not come to call people who think that they are righteous to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

- **How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!** (Mark 7:9 ULB)

- You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!
- **“Present your case,” says Yahweh; “present your best arguments for your idols,” says the King of Jacob. “Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.” (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULB)**
 - ‘Present your case,’ says Yahweh; ‘present your best arguments for your idols,’ says the King of Jacob. Your idols cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because they cannot speak to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.
- **Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?**

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

**Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;
the number of your days is so large!” (Job 38:20, 21 ULB)**

- Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!

Uses:

- Micah 1:13-14
- Micah 2:3-5
- Micah 2:3-5
- Micah 2:3-5
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 5:1
- Micah 5:6-7

Metaphor

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a sentence that has one?*

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which one concept (the “image”) stands for another concept (the “topic”). That is, the topic is spoken of as if it were the image. For example, someone might say,

- The girl I love is a red rose.

Here the topic is “the girl I love,” and the image is “a red rose.” The girl is spoken of as if she were a red rose.

Anything in a language can serve as a metaphor. For example, verb forms can be used in unusual ways, as in,

- The Apostle Paul tells us that Christians will rise to life again.

In this case, the English present tense form “tells” is a metaphor for the past tense form “told,” because the Apostle Paul lived long ago.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique.

Speakers most often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Kinds of Metaphors

There are several kinds of metaphors: “live” metaphors, “dead” metaphors, and patterned metaphors.

Live Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept. People also easily recognize them as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULB)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people.

Here is another example: Jesus said, ‘Go and tell that fox...,’ where “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was referring to Herod either as a very evil, cunning person or as a king who was only pretending to be great.

Dead Metaphors

A dead metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Examples in English are “table leg,” “family tree,” “leaf” meaning a page in a book, and “crane” meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads. English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples in Biblical Hebrew are probably “heal” meaning “repair,” and “sick” meaning “spiritually powerless because of sin.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP often stands for the concept of MORE. Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The heat is going *down*,” and “The stock market *took a tumble*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities, such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities, as if they were objects that could be seen or held, as if they were body parts, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view them as unusual expressions, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech.

For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

Parts of a Metaphor

When talking about metaphors, it can be helpful to talk about their parts. A metaphor has three parts.

1. **Topic** - The thing someone speaks of is called the topic.

2. **Image** - The thing he calls it is the image.
3. **Points of Comparison** - The ways in which the author claims that the topic and image are similar in some manner are their points of comparison.

In the metaphor below, the speaker describes the woman he loves as a red rose. The woman (his “love”) is the **topic**, and “red rose” is the **image**. Beauty and delicacy are the points of comparison that the speaker sees as similarities between both the topic and image. Note, however, that a rose’s beauty is not identical to a woman’s beauty. Neither are the two kinds of delicacy the same. So these points of comparison are not built upon identical characteristics, but rather upon characteristics that are seen by the writer as similar in some way.

- My love is a red, red rose.

Often, as in the metaphor above, the speaker explicitly states the **topic** and the **image**, but he does not state the points of comparison. The speaker leaves it to the hearer to think of those points of comparison. Because the hearers must do that, the speaker’s message tends to be more powerful.

Also in the Bible, normally the **topic** and the **image** are stated clearly, but not the points of comparison. The writer hopes that the audience will understand the points of comparison that are implied.

Jesus said to them. “I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty.” (John 6:35 ULB)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **topic** is “I,” and the **image** is “bread.” Bread is a food that people ate all the time. The point of comparison between bread and Jesus is that people needed bread every day for nourishment. In a similar way, people need Jesus every day in order to live spiritually.

Note that this metaphor is really several metaphors. The first metaphor is that bread is used to represent Jesus. The second metaphor, which is inside the first one, is that physical life represents the spiritual life, which consists of living with God forever. The third metaphor is that eating bread represents benefitting from Jesus, who enables us to live with God forever.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something has a particular quality or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about one thing as they would feel about the other.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.

- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker is thinking of and wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, you cows of Bashan, (Amos 4:1 ULB)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria (the topic is “you”) with as if they were cows (the image). Amos does not say what points of comparison between these women and the cows he has in mind, but from the context it seems that he means that both the women and the cows are fat and interested only in eating.

Note, however, that Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows, for he speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)

The example above has two related metaphors. The topics are “we” and “you,” and the images are “clay and ”potter.” The intended point of comparison between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish: the potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people Israel. The point of comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that both the clay and the people of Israel are made into something different from what they were before.

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.” The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we took no bread.” (Matthew 16:6-7 ULB)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the image in his metaphor, and the topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers probably understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language. (See Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns for lists of some of these patterned pairs of concepts.)
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the image, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that image for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the topic is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
7. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and topic, then state them clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If the metaphor is a common expression of a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language, express the main idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.
 - **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet.** (Mark 5:22 ULB)
 - Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, immediately bowed down in front of him.
2. If the metaphor seems to be a “live” metaphor, you can translate it literally if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
 - **It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,** (Mark 10:5 ULB)
 - It was because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law,

There is no change to this one - but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

1. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are like clay. You are like a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.
2. If the target audience would not know the **image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick against a pointed stick.
3. If the target audience would not use that **image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
 - **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand.** (Isaiah 64:8 ULB)
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the wood. You are our carver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
 - “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the string. You are the weaver; and we all are the work of your hand.”
4. If the target audience would not know what the **topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; He is my rock. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
5. If the target audience will not know the intended points of comparison between the image and the topic, then state them clearly.
 - **Yahweh lives; may my rock be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.** (Psalm 18:46 ULB)
 - Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock under which I can hide from my enemies. May the God of my salvation be exalted.
 - **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad.** (Acts 26:14 ULB)
 - Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner’s pointed stick.
6. If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

- **I will make you become fishers of men.** (Mark 1:17 ULB)
 - I will make you become people who gather men.
 - Now you gather fish. I will make you gather people.

To learn more about specific metaphors read:

- Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns

Uses:

- Micah 01 General Notes
- Micah 1:2-4
- Micah 1:2-4
- Micah 1:6-7
- Micah 1:6-7
- Micah 1:8-10
- Micah 1:8-10
- Micah 1:11-12
- Micah 1:13-14
- Micah 2:3-5
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 03 General Notes
- Micah 3:1-3
- Micah 3:4
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 3:5-7
- Micah 3:8
- Micah 3:9-11
- Micah 3:12
- Micah 4:1
- Micah 4:1
- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:2-3
- Micah 4:4-5
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 4:13
- Micah 4:13
- Micah 5:1
- Micah 5:1
- Micah 5:4-5

- Micah 5:4-5
- Micah 5:6-7
- Micah 5:12-15
- Micah 6:3-5
- Micah 6:9-10
- Micah 6:11-12
- Micah 6:13-15
- Micah 6:13-15
- Micah 6:16
- Micah 7:1-2
- Micah 7:1-2
- Micah 7:1-2
- Micah 7:3-4
- Micah 7:7-8
- Micah 7:7-8
- Micah 7:7-8
- Micah 7:9
- Micah 7:9
- Micah 7:9
- Micah 7:9
- Micah 7:10
- Micah 7:11-13
- Micah 7:14-15
- Micah 7:14-15
- Micah 7:16-17
- Micah 7:16-17
- Micah 7:19-20

Metonymy

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which a thing or idea is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something it is associated with.

and the blood of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULB)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULB)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- to a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULB)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship" or "reign." This means that God would make him become the king that would follow King David.

Immediately his mouth was opened (Luke 1:64 ULB)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

... who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULB)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
 - **He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "This cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.** (Luke 22:20 ULB)
 - "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "The wine in this cup is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."
2. Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.
 - **The Lord God will give him the throne of his father, David.** (Luke 1:32 ULB)
 - "The Lord God will give him the kingly authority of his father, David."
 - "The Lord God will make him king like his ancestor, King David."
 - **who warned you to flee from the wrath to come?** (Luke 3:7 ULB)
 - "who warned you to flee from God's coming punishment?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies](#).### Uses:

- [Micah 1:5](#)
- [Micah 1:5](#)
- [Micah 1:5](#)
- [Micah 1:5](#)
- [Micah 1:5](#)
- [Micah 1:13-14](#)
- [Micah 2:6-8](#)
- [Micah 3:5-7](#)
- [Micah 3:8](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 3:9-11](#)
- [Micah 4:2-3](#)
- [Micah 4:9-10](#)
- [Micah 5:1](#)
- [Micah 5:4-5](#)
- [Micah 5:6-7](#)
- [Micah 5:8-9](#)
- [Micah 5:12-15](#)

- Micah 6:9-10
- Micah 6:9-10
- Micah 6:9-10
- Micah 7:5-6
- Micah 7:7-8
- Micah 7:19-20

Nominal Adjectives

This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word “rich” is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that “rich” is an adjective.

... The rich man had huge numbers of flocks and herds ... (2 Samuel 12:2 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes before the word “man” and describes “man.”

He will not be rich; his wealth will not last ... (Job 15:29 ULB)

The adjective “rich” comes after the verb “be” and describes “He.”

Here is a sentence that shows that “rich” can also function as a noun.

...the rich must not give more than the half shekel, and the poor must not give less.
(Exodus 30:15 ULB)

In Exodus 30:15, the word “rich” acts as a noun in the phrase “the rich,” and it refers to rich people. The word “poor” also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous. (Psalms 125:3 ULB)

“The righteous” here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

Blessed are the meek (Matthew 5:5 ULB)

“The meek” here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.
 - **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of the righteous.** (Psalms 125:3 ULB)
 - The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of righteous people.
 - **Blessed are the meek ...** (Matthew 5:5 ULB)
 - Blessed are people who are meek ...

Uses:

- Micah 3:1-3
- Micah 6:9-10

Numbers

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words, such as “five” or as numerals, such as “5.” Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000.) Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULB)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about three thousand men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULB)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue: Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived 162 years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived 962 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULB)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of thousands of ten thousands (Genesis 24:60 ULB)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULB)

1. Write numbers using numerals.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house 100,000 talents of gold, 1,000,000 talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, one million talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand (100,000) talents of gold, one million (1,000,000) talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house one hundred thousand talents of gold, a thousand thousand talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.
 - I have prepared for Yahweh's house a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents), and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULB and UDB

The *Unlocked Literal Bible* (ULB) and the *Unlocked Dynamic Bible* (UDB) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals “130” instead of “one hundred thirty”).

When Adam had lived 130 years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived eight hundred years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived 930 years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULB)### Uses:

- [Micah 6:6-8](#)

Parallelism

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term “synonymous parallelism” for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULB)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULB)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULB)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

The second completes what is said in the first.

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULB)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULB)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULB)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
 - **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULB) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
 - “Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”
 - “Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”
 - **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULB) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
 - “For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
- **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”
- **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULB)
 - “All you have done is lie to me.”
 - **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULB)
 - “Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Uses:

- **Micah 1:1**

Personification

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULB)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were like relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULB)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULB)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.
2. Use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add words or phrases to make it clear.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - God speaks of sin as a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.
 - ... sin is at your door, waiting to attack you

2. Use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentences is not to be understood literally.

- ... **sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULB) - This can be translated with the word “as.”
 - ... sin is crouching at the door, just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person.

3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

- ... **even the winds and the sea obey him** (Matthew 8:27 ULB) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea as if they are able to hear” and obey Jesus as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.
 - He even controls the winds and the sea.

Note: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics.)### Uses:

- Micah 6:1-2
- Micah 6:1-2
- Micah 6:9-10

Rhetorical Question

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all, but if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, "Is this how you insult God's high priest?" (Acts 23:4 ULB)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used their question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. Some of the purposes of these rhetorical questions are to express attitudes or feelings, to rebuke people, to teach something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, and to introduce something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are more limited or different than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULB)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULB)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULB)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden... (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was going to compare the kingdom of God to something.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, is the one who asked it bothered that he did not get an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you know what the purpose of the rhetorical question is. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Add the answer after the question.
 - **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Of course not! Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!
 - **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? None of you would do that!
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
 - **What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed...** (Luke 13:18-19 ULB)
 - This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."
 - **Is this how you insult God's high priest?** (Acts 23:4 ULB)
 - You should not insult God's high priest!
 - **Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?** (Job 3:11 ULB)
 - I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!
 - **And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?** (Luke 1:43 ULB)
 - How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
 - **Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel?** (1 Kings 21:7 ULB)
 - You still rule the kingdom of Israel, do you not?
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

- **Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone?** (Matthew 7:9 ULB)
 - If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, would you give him a stone?
- **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!** (Jeremiah 2:32 ULB)
 - What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

Uses:

- Micah 1:5
- Micah 1:5
- Micah 2:3-5
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 2:6-8
- Micah 3:1-3
- Micah 3:9-11
- Micah 4:9-10
- Micah 4:9-10
- Micah 6:3-5
- Micah 6:6-8
- Micah 6:6-8
- Micah 6:11-12
- Micah 7:10
- Micah 7:18

Simile

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as” or “than.”

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were like sheep without a shepherd. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves, so be as wise as serpents and harmless as doves. (Matthew 10:16 ULB)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword. (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, as a good soldier of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULB)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULB)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.
 - See, I send you out among wicked people and you will be in danger from them as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves.
 - **For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword.** (Hebrews 4:12 ULB)
 - For the word of God is living and active and more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible.
 - **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

- See, I send you out as chickens in the midst of wild dogs,
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to gather your children together, as a mother closely watches over her infants, but you refused!
 - **If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard,** (Matthew 17:20)
 - If you have faith even as small as a tiny seed,
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.
- **See, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves,** (Matthew 10:16 ULB)
 - See, I send you out and people will want to harm you.
 - **How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings, but you did not agree!** (Matthew 23:37 ULB)
 - How often I wanted to protect you, but you refused!

Uses:

- Micah 1:8-10
- Micah 4:9-10
- Micah 4:9-10
- Micah 4:11-12
- Micah 5:6-7
- Micah 5:8-9
- Micah 7:3-4
- Micah 7:10
- Micah 7:16-17

Symbolic Action

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes.”

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

Translators need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in their own culture, they need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULB)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB)
 - Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB)
 - Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)
 - Jairus showed Jesus great respect.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)
 - Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.
 - **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULB) - Since Jairus actually did this, we would not substitute an action from our own culture.
 - **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULB) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.
 - Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

Uses:

- [Micah 1:8-10](#)
- [Micah 1:15-16](#)
- [Micah 7:16-17](#)
- [Micah 7:16-17](#)

Synecdoche

This page answers the question: *What does the word synecdoche mean?*

Description

Synecdoche is when a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULB)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful ...?”
(Mark 2:24 ULB)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may understand the words literally.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.
 - **”My soul exalts the Lord.”** (Luke 1:46 ULB)
 - ”I exalt the Lord.”
 - **...the Pharisees said to him** (Mark 2:24 ULB)

- ...a representative of the Pharisees said to him ...
- **... I looked on all the deeds that my hands had accomplished ...** (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULB)
 - I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Uses:

- Micah 1:5
- Micah 4:4-5
- Micah 4:6-8
- Micah 4:9-10
- Micah 4:11-12
- Micah 5:8-9
- Micah 5:8-9
- Micah 6:9-10
- Micah 6:9-10
- Micah 6:11-12
- Micah 7:3-4
- Micah 7:10

Translate Unknowns

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The translationWords pages and the translationNotes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULB)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread or know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves. (Matthew 7:15 ULB)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULB)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

to him who made great lights (Psalm 136:7 ULB)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

your sins ... will be white like snow (Isaiah 1:18 ULB)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

- **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous wolves.** (Matthew 7:15 ULB)
 - Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly hungry and dangerous animals.

“Ravenous wolves” is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - We have here only five loaves of baked grain seeds and two fish

2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

- **your sins ... will be white like snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULB) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

- your sins ... will be white like milk
- your sins ... will be white like the moon

3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

- **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with myrrh. But he refused to drink it.** (Mark 15:23 ULB) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”
 - Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with a medicine called myrrh. But he refused to drink it.
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).
 - We have here only five loaves of baked crushed seed bread and two fish

4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

- **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULB)
 - I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for wild dogs
- **We have here only five loaves of bread and two fish** (Matthew 14:17 ULB)
 - We have here only five loaves of baked food and two fish

5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

- **to him who made great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULB)
 - to him who made the sun and the moon

Uses:

- Micah 4:13
- Micah 4:13